

VĨNH BÁ

# 5000 CÂU TRẮC NGHIỆM TIẾNG ANH

9

CÓ ĐÁP ÁN



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

## Exercise 1

1. The wedding party\_\_\_\_\_ at the Rex Hotel.  
a. is                      b. is being                      c. will be                      d. is going to be
2. How many languages\_\_\_\_\_ John speak?  
a. do                      b. does                      c. did                      d. will
3. Hurry! The train\_\_\_\_\_ I don't want to miss it.  
a. comes                      b. is coming                      c. came                      d. has come
4. Angelina Jolie is a famous actress. She \_\_\_\_\_ in several film.  
a. appears                      b. is appearing                      c. appeared                      d. has appeared
5. I saw Maggie at the party. She \_\_\_\_\_ in several film.  
a. wears                      b. wore                      c. was wearing                      d. has worn
6. What time\_\_\_\_\_ the next train leave?  
a. does                      b. will                      c. shall                      d. would
7. Monica\_\_\_\_\_ with her sister at the moment until she finds a flat.  
a. stays                      b. is staying                      c. will stay                      d. is going to stay
8. After I\_\_\_\_\_ lunch, I looked for my bag.  
a. had                      b. had had                      c. have has                      d. have had
9. By the end of next year, George\_\_\_\_\_ English for 2 years.  
a. will have learned                      b. will learn                      c. has leaned                      d. would learn
10. The man got out of the car,\_\_\_\_\_ round to the back and opened the boot.  
a. walking                      b. walked                      c. walks                      d. walk
11. For several years his ambition \_\_\_\_\_ to be a pilot.  
a. is                      b. has been                      c. was                      d. had been
12. Henry\_\_\_\_\_ into the restaurant when the writer was having dinner.  
a. was going                      b. went                      c. has gone                      d. did go
13. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
a. finish                      b. finishes                      c. will finish                      d. shall have finished
14. Before you asked, the letter\_\_\_\_\_   
a. was written                      b. had been written                      c. had written                      d. has been written
15. She \_\_\_\_\_ English at RMIT these days.  
a. studies                      b. is studying                      c. will study                      d. is gong to study
16. She's at her best when she\_\_\_\_\_ big decisions.  
a. is making                      b. makes                      c. had made                      d. will make
17. We\_\_\_\_\_ next vacation in London.  
a. spend                      b. are spending                      c. will spend                      d. are going to spend
18. Robert\_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning on the 10:30 train.  
a. arrived                      b. is arriving                      c. has arrived                      d. would arrive
19. Look! The bus\_\_\_\_\_   
a. left                      b. has left                      c. leaves                      d. is leaving
20. Mike\_\_\_\_\_ one hour ago.  
a. phoned                      b. was phoning                      c. had phoned                      d. has phoned

1c	2b	3b	4d	5c	6a	7b	8b	9a	10b
11b	12b	13b	14b	15b	16a	17b	18b	19d	20a

## Exercise 2

1. I shall be glad when he\_\_\_\_\_  
a. had gone                      b. did go                      c. went                      d. had gone
2. Ask her to come and see me when she \_\_\_\_\_ her work.  
a. finish                      b. has finished                      c. finished                      d. finishing
3. After you finish your work, you\_\_\_\_\_ a break.  
a. should take                      b. have taken                      c. might have taken                      d. takes
4. Oil\_\_\_\_\_ if you pour it on water  
a. floated                      b. floats                      c. will be floated                      d. float
5. When he returned home, he found the door\_\_\_\_\_.  
a. unlocking                      b. unlocked                      c. to be unlocked                      d. have unlocked
6. That dancing club\_\_\_\_\_ north of the city  
a. lays                      b. lies                      c. locates                      d. lain
7. Almost everyone\_\_\_\_\_ for home by the time we arrived.  
a. leave                      b. left                      c. leaves                      d. had left
8. By the age of 25, he \_\_\_\_\_ two famous novels.  
a. wrote                      b. writes                      c. has written                      d. had written
9. While her husband was in the army, Janet\_\_\_\_\_ to him twice a week.  
a. was writing                      b. wrote                      c. was written                      d. had written
10. I couldn't cut the grass because the machine\_\_\_\_\_ a few days previously.  
a. broken down                      b. has been broken                      c. had broke down                      d. breaks down
11. We \_\_\_\_\_ English this time last week.  
a. learned                      b. were learning                      c. have learned                      d. had learned
12. Is it raining? - No, it isn't but the ground is wet. It\_\_\_\_\_  
a. rained                      b. had rained                      c. has rained                      d. has been raining
13. Her family\_\_\_\_\_ to America before 1975.  
a. went                      b. have gone                      c. had gone                      d. would go
14. When I arrived at the party, Martha\_\_\_\_\_ home already.  
a. went                      b. have gone                      c. had gone                      d. would go
15. Henry\_\_\_\_\_ for 10 years when he finally gave it up.  
a. has smoked                      b. has been smoking                      c. had smoked                      d. had been smoking'
16. Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window. The sun was shining but the ground was very wet. It\_\_\_\_\_  
a. rained                      b. has been raining                      c. had rained                      d. had been raining
17. We \_\_\_\_\_ our examination next month.  
a. have                      b. shall have                      c. will have had                      d. will be having
18. Look at those black clouds! It\_\_\_\_\_  
a. is going to rain                      b. will rain                      c. would rain                      d. can rain
19. We\_\_\_\_\_ English this time next Monday.  
a. learn                      b. will learn                      c. are learning                      d. will be learning
20. We\_\_\_\_\_ this course before the final examination.  
a. are going to finish                      b. have finished                      c. will finish                      d. will have finished

1d	2b	3b	4d	5c	6a	7b	8b	9b	10c
11b	12b	13b	14b	15b	16a	17b	18b	19d	20a

### Exercise 3

1. I\_\_\_\_\_ "Chicken soup for the soul" but I haven't finished it yet.

- a. read                      b. am reading                      c. have been reading                      d. was reading
2. Alan took a photograph of Sandra while she\_\_\_\_\_
- a. didn't look                      b. wasn't looking                      c. hasn't looked                      d.. hadn't looked
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ my key. Can you help me look for it?
- a. lose                      b. lost                      c. had lost                      d. have lost
4. Last night Tine\_\_\_\_\_ in bed when suddenly she heard a scream.
- a. read                      b. was reading                      c. had read                      d. had read
5. We\_\_\_\_\_ a part next week. Would you like to come?
- a. have                      b. will have                      c. are having                      d. will have had
6. The Red River\_\_\_\_\_ very fast today-much faster than yesterday.
- a. flows                      b. is flowing                      c. will flow                      d. is going to flow
7. While mother\_\_\_\_\_ dinner the phone rang.
- a. cooked                      b. had cooked                      c. has cooked                      d. was cooking
8. Fish\_\_\_\_\_ on earth for ages and ages.
- a. existed                      b. are existing                      c. exist                      d. have existed
9. The phone\_\_\_\_\_ constantly since Jack won the first prize this morning.
- a. has been ringing                      b. rang                      c. had rung                      d. had been ringing
10. The earth\_\_\_\_\_ on the sun for its heat and light.
- a. is depend                      b. depending                      c. has depend                      d. depends
11. I don't feel good. I \_\_\_\_\_ home from work tomorrow.
- a. am staying                      b. stay                      c. will have stayed                      d. stayed
12. In the last two decades, space exploration\_\_\_\_great contributions to weather forecasting.
- a. is making                      b. has made                      c. made                      d. makes
13. On July 20, 1969, Neil Armstrong \_\_\_\_\_ down onto the moon, the first person ever set foot on another planet.
- a. was stepping                      b. stepped                      c. has stepped                      d. was step
14. When boarding the plane, many passengers were annoyed because they \_\_\_\_\_ waiting in the airport for three ad a half hours.
- a. are                      b. were                      c. have been                      d. had been
15. If coastal erosion continues to take place at the present rate, in another fifty years this beach\_\_\_\_\_ any more.
- a. doesn't exist                      b. isn't going to exits                      c. isn't existing                      d. won't be existing
16. Their football team\_\_\_\_\_ a championship until last season.
- a. had never won                      b. is never winning                      c. had never been winning                      d. had never won
17. By the end of this year, Tom \_\_\_\_\_English for three years.
- a. will be studying                      b. has studied                      c. will have studied                      d. has been studying
18. In one year's time, I\_\_\_\_\_ in this school for 15 years.
- a. will be working                      b. will work                      c. will have studied                      d. has been studying'
19. They \_\_\_\_\_ this course by next June.
- a. have finished                      b. will finish                      c. are going to finish                      d. will have finished
20. She will go abroad as soon as she\_\_\_\_\_ this English course.
- a. has completed                      b. will complete                      c. will have completed                      d. completed

1c	2b	3d	4b	5c	6b	7d	8d	9a	10d
11a	12b	13b	14d	15b	16d	17c	18c	19d	20a

#### Exercise 4

1. The child\_\_\_\_\_ before the doctor arrived.  
a. died                      b. had died                      c. has died                      d. was dying
2. We cleaned up the room as soon as the guests\_\_\_\_\_  
a. had left                      b. has left                      c. left                      d. were leaving
3. The secretary\_\_\_\_\_ the report by 10:00 yesterday.  
a. hasn't finished                      b. hasn't finished                      c. didn't finish                      d. would finish
4. Jane's eyes are red. She\_\_\_\_\_  
a. cried                      b. has cried                      c. has been crying                      d. had cried
5. This room is dirty. Someone\_\_\_\_\_ in here.  
a. smoked                      b. has smoked                      c. had been smoking                      d. has been smoking
6. Arsenal\_\_\_\_\_ next Monday.  
a. wins                      b. will win                      c. would win                      d. is winning
7. it\_\_\_\_\_ rain tomorrow.  
a. rains                      b. will rain                      c. is going to rain                      d. is raining
8. I'll come and see you before I \_\_\_\_\_ for America.  
a. leave                      b. will leave                      c. have left                      d. shall leave
9. The little girl asked what\_\_\_\_\_ to her friend.  
a. has happened                      b. happened                      c. had happened  
d. would have been happened
10. John\_\_\_\_\_ a book when I saw him.  
a. is reading                      b. read                      c. was reading                      d. reading
11. He said he\_\_\_\_\_ return later.  
a. will                      b. would                      c. can                      d. would be'
12. Jack\_\_\_\_\_ he door.  
a. has just opened                      b. open                      c. will have opened                      d. opening
13. I have been waiting for you\_\_\_\_\_  
a. since early morning                      b. since 9 a.m                      c. for two hours                      d. all are correct
14. My sister\_\_\_\_\_ for you since yesterday.  
a. is looking                      b. was looking                      c. has been looking                      d. looked
15. Jack\_\_\_\_\_ the door.  
a. has just painted                      b. paint                      c. will have painted                      d. painting
16. The train\_\_\_\_\_ half an hour ago.  
a. has been leaving                      b. left                      c. has left                      d. had left
17. We\_\_\_\_\_ Doris since last Sunday.  
a. don't see                      b. haven't seen                      c. didn't see                      d. hadn't seen
18. When I last saw him, he\_\_\_\_\_ in London.  
a. has lived                      b. is living                      c. was living                      d. has been living
19. She is tired now. She\_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.  
a. has been learning                      b. has learned                      c. learns                      d. learned
20. They will have gone home before you\_\_\_\_\_ to meet them.  
a. came                      b. come                      c. will come                      d. are coming

1b	2a	3a	4c	5d	6b	7d	8a	9b	10b
11b	12d	13d	14b	15c	16a	17c	18b	19a	20b

### Exercise 5

1. Hurry up or the train\_\_\_\_\_ before you ca catch it.

- a. will leave                      b. leaves                      c. will have left                      d. has left
2. Now my sister \_\_\_\_\_ a bicycle of her own.  
a. is having                      b. are having                      c. has                      d. had
3. A football team \_\_\_\_\_ chiefly of 12 players.  
a. composed                      b. composes                      c. comprised                      d. comprises
4. This is the first time I \_\_\_\_\_ here.  
a. am                      b. have been                      c. was                      d. be
5. Last week, my professor promised that he \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
a. would come                      b. will come                      c. comes                      d. coming
6. My girls friend arrived after I \_\_\_\_\_ for her about half an hour.  
a. was waiting                      b. had been waiting                      c. has been waiting                      d. have waited
7. Did she say she \_\_\_\_\_ him tomorrow?  
a. has visited                      b. will visit                      c. would visit                      d. is going to visit
8. \_\_\_\_\_ to rain before you woke up this morning?  
a. Did it begin                      b. has it begun                      c. Had it begun                      d. Would it begin
9. My daughter saw an elephant this morning but she \_\_\_\_\_ one before.  
a. had never seen                      b. has never seen                      c. never seen                      d. never had seen
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ in Da Nang before I moved to Dong Nai.  
a. have been living                      b. have lived                      c. had lived                      d. had been living
11. There are many ways \_\_\_\_\_ to Rome.  
a. is leading                      b. are leading                      c. leading                      d. led
12. When we got home, dinner \_\_\_\_\_ so we had a drink first.  
a. was preparing                      b. was being prepared  
c. was prepared                      d. had been prepared
13. She was tired. She \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.  
a. has been learning                      b. had been learning                      c. leaned                      d. was learning
14. He \_\_\_\_\_ in space for 10 days by tomorrow.  
a. will travel                      b. will be traveling                      c. will have been traveling                      d. has traveled
15. He said he would visit me, but he \_\_\_\_\_ me yet.  
a. has not visited                      b. had not visited                      c. is not visiting                      d. does not visit
16. The weather \_\_\_\_\_ fine so far this week.  
a. is                      b. has been                      c. was                      d. had been
17. Before the prime Minister leaves New Your he \_\_\_\_\_ several talks.  
a. will have had                      b. would have                      c. will be having                      d. has
18. We had just got out of car when it \_\_\_\_\_ to set fire.  
a. has begun                      b. had begun                      c. was beginning                      d. began
19. As soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ a certificate in English, he will apply for a job.  
a. would get                      b. got                      c. gets                      d. will get
20. He was told that he \_\_\_\_\_ knocked out in the first round.  
a. had been                      b. was                      c. has been                      d. was being

1c	2c	3b	4b	5a	6b	7c	8c	9a	10d
11c	12b	13b	14c	15a	16b	17a	18d	19c	20a

### Exercise 6

1. Michael \_\_\_\_\_ a word with Lisa this morning.

- a. has                      b. had                      c. has had                      d. had had
2. Old Ted\_\_\_\_\_ twenty cigarettes a day till he gave up.  
a. had smoked              b. has smoked              c. smoked                      d. smokes
3. Stephen\_\_\_\_\_ on the phone when I came in.  
a. talked                      b. was talking              c. has talked                      d. has been talking
4. I\_\_\_\_\_ TV at 8L30 last night.  
a. watched                      b. was watching              c. has watched                      d. had watched
5. While I was working in the garden, my son\_\_\_\_\_ video games.  
a. was playing              b. played                      c. has played                      d. has been playing
6. When he worked here, simon\_\_\_\_\_ mistakes.  
a. always made              b. made always              c. was always making d. was making always
7. I\_\_\_\_\_ if you could give me hand  
a. wonder                      b. am wondering              c. wondered                      d. was wondering
8. I\_\_\_\_\_ four chairs so far this morning.  
a. painted                      b. was painting              c. have panted                      d. had painted
9. Frank\_\_\_\_\_ home since he was a boy.  
a. isn't                      b. wasn't                      c. hasn't been                      d. hadn't been
10. Mai\_\_\_\_\_ in HCM for five years.  
a. lives                      b. has lived                      c. is living                      d. was living
11. We\_\_\_\_\_ "Alexander the Great". It's very interesting!  
a. see                      b. saw                      c. have seen                      d. would see
12. I've lived here\_\_\_\_\_ 1990.  
a. since                      b. from                      c. to                      d. for
13. Paulo has learned English\_\_\_\_\_ five years.  
a. since                      b. from                      c. to                      d. for
14. My little sister\_\_\_\_\_ "sleeping beauty" several times.  
a. watches                      b. is watching                      c. has watched                      d. watched
15. since the appearance of karaoke machines, they\_\_\_\_\_  
a. had been widely used                      b. have been widely used  
c. were widely used                      d. widely used
16. She has been studying engineering\_\_\_\_\_  
a. since 5 years              b. for 5 years              c. 5 years before              d. during 5 years.
17. In 1996, my brother\_\_\_\_\_ at Harvard university.  
a. studies                      b. is studying                      c. studied                      d. had studied
18. Are you learning your lesson? No, I\_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. finished                      b. have finished              c. finishing                      d. have finished'
19. Elvis Presley\_\_\_\_\_ on television for a long time.  
a. isn't appearing              b. hasn't appeared              c. won't have appeared              d. hadn't appeared
20. We\_\_\_\_\_ waiting for her half a hour before she came.  
a. have been                      b. will be                      c. will have been                      d. had been

1b	2c	3b	4b	5a	6c	7d	8c	9d	10b
11c	12a	13d	14c	15b	16b	17c	18b	19b	20d

### Exercise 7

1. There's a strange smell in here. Mother\_\_\_\_\_ something.  
a. cooks                      b. is cooking                      c. will cook                      d. has cooked

2. The concert\_\_\_\_\_ at 7:15.  
a. starts                      b. is starting                      c. has started                      d. is going to start
3. Nora says she's 17 but I \_\_\_\_\_ here.  
a. don't believe                      b. didn't believe                      c. won't believe                      d. wouldn't believe
4. Sorry I'm late - That OK, I \_\_\_\_\_ long  
a. don't wait                      b. am not waiting                      c. haven't waited                      d. haven't been waiting
5. We did not go out because it \_\_\_\_\_  
a. would rain                      b. was raining                      c. had rained                      d. has rained
6. Michael, is it true that you \_\_\_\_\_ married next week?  
a. get                      b. are getting                      c. got                      d. have got
7. Mr. Black did teach that lesson along tome ago, but now he never remembers \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. teach                      b. teaches                      c. taught                      d. having taught
8. Her life has changed a lot \_\_\_\_\_ she became rich.  
a. since                      b. for                      c. because of                      d. owing to
9. The wind \_\_\_\_\_ very hard when the ship sailed around the Mediterranean Sea.  
a. blew                      b. was blowing                      c. has blown                      d. was blown
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ that novel at least twice.  
a. have read                      b. read                      c. reads                      d. have been reading
11. What did the farmer do after locusts \_\_\_\_\_ their crop?  
a. damage                      b. are damaged                      c. have damaged                      d. had damaged
12. We \_\_\_\_\_ to Tri An a few times recently.  
a. would be                      b. were                      c. had been                      d. have been
13. In former times \_\_\_\_\_ to go to a dentist.  
a. many people were afraid                      b. many people afraid  
c. many peoples were afraid                      d. many peoples feared
14. He might have given you some advise if you \_\_\_\_\_ him to.  
a. would have asked                      b. had asked                      c. asked                      d. would ask
15. Sir Thompson always \_\_\_\_\_ funny stories after dinner.  
a. said                      b. has said                      c. says                      d. tells'
16. The milkman \_\_\_\_\_ the jug of milk on the table outside the kitchen  
a. lain                      b. lay                      c. laid                      d. lie
17. My litter sister is afraid to \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes after dinner.  
a. have done                      b. do                      c. make                      d. made
18. Did you see him yesterday? Oh no, but I \_\_\_\_\_  
a. should                      b. ought to                      c. should have                      d. did
19. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ his name  
a. know                      b. known                      c. knew                      d. have known
20. When his girlfriend came, he \_\_\_\_\_ his car.  
a. cleaning                      b. cleans                      c. is cleaning                      d. was cleaning

1b	2a	4a	4d	5b	6b	7d	8a	9b	10a
11d	12d	13a	14b	15d	16c	17b	18c	19c	20d

### Exercise 8

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow at 12:30  
a. will leave                      b. are leaving                      c. are going to leave                      d. leave
2. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ at the door, can you answer it?



- a. knocks                      b. is knocking                      c. has knocked                      d. knocked
3. John\_\_\_\_\_ at the moment, so he can't answer the telephone.  
a. works                      b. is working                      c. has worked                      d. will work
4. The river\_\_\_\_\_ after last night's rain.  
a. flowed                      b. flows                      c. is flowing                      d. will flow
5. He\_\_\_\_\_ for Chelsea this season.  
a. played                      b. is playing                      c. would play                      d. has played
6. We shall make a trip around the world when the opportunity\_\_\_\_\_ itself to us.  
a. will present                      b. will have presented c. presents                      d. will be presenting
7. This pupil\_\_\_\_\_ his best and \_\_\_\_\_ only one mistake in his dictation.  
a. made/did                      b. did/made                      c. made/made                      d. did/did
8. The holiday makers\_\_\_\_\_ in the sunshine to get sunburnt.  
a. laid                      b. lied                      c. led                      d. laying
9. The snake\_\_\_\_\_ one big egg last week.  
a. lay                      b. laid                      c. led                      d. laying
10. I'm afraid you\_\_\_\_\_ number.  
a. have mistaken                      b. are with the wrong                      c. have the wrong                      d. made the wrong
11. I like looking at the pictures, but I \_\_\_\_\_ enough by lunch time.  
a. should have                      b. will have                      c. will have had                      d. have
12. I don't understand this sentence. What\_\_\_\_\_?  
a. does mean this word                      b. have this word mean  
c. means this word                      d. does this word mean
13. John\_\_\_\_\_ tennis once or twice a week.  
a. usually play                      b. in usually playing  
c. usually plays                      d. have usually played
14. It was noisy next door. Our neighbors\_\_\_\_\_ a party  
a. had                      b. were having                      c. had had                      d. have had
15. It\_\_\_\_\_ dark. Shall I turn on the light?  
a. is getting                      b. get                      c. got                      d. has got
16. I\_\_\_\_\_ for Christine. Do you know where she is?  
a. look                      b. looked                      c. am looking                      d. looks
17. At 5 o'clock yesterday evening, I \_\_\_\_\_ my clothes.  
a. am ironing                      b. have ironed                      c. ironed                      d. was ironing
18. Are you ready, Ann? Yes, I\_\_\_\_\_  
a. am coming                      b. come                      c. came                      d. have came
19. Why\_\_\_\_\_ at me like that? What's the matter?  
a. do you look                      b. have you looked c. did you look                      d. are you looking
20. I\_\_\_\_\_ along the street when I suddenly heard footsteps behind me.  
a. was walking                      b. a walking                      c. walk                      d. walked

1d	2b	3b	4c	5b	6c	7b	8d	9b	10c
11c	12d	13c	14b	15a	16c	17d	18a	19d	20a

### Exercise 9

1. There was a time when watching TV really\_\_\_\_\_ family entertainment  
a. were                      b. was                      c. had been                      d. is
2. Last year they \_\_\_\_\_ 22 million TV sets.

- a. were selling      b. has sold      c. has sold      d. sold
3. At last the bus came. We \_\_\_\_\_ for half an hour  
a. waited      b. was waiting      c. have waited      d. had been waiting
4. Through the rain, I \_\_\_\_\_ a lighted window and a sign wich said "Sam's Place".  
a. have seen      b. was seeing      c. saw      d. see
5. Danniell \_\_\_\_\_ the bus. It doesn't run on Sundays.  
a. Did not catch      b. have not caught  
c. had not caught      d. couldn't have caught
6. We didn't play very well. We \_\_\_\_\_ better.  
a. should have played      b. should play      c. have played      d. have been playing
7. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ pay to park here, I'll just go and read that notice.  
a. will      b. would      c. must      d. better
8. I think you should have that coast \_\_\_\_\_ soon.  
a. cleaned      b. being cleaned      c. leaning      d. to clean
9. I'm feeling sick. I \_\_\_\_\_ so much chocolate last night.  
a. needn't to eat      b. did not eat      c. mustn't eat      d. shouldn't have eaten
10. I'm going on holyday on Saturday. This time next week I \_\_\_\_\_ on a beach in the sea.  
a. will lie      b. am lying      c. will be lying      d. should be lying
11. Ted and Amy \_\_\_\_\_ for 24 years.  
a. have been married      b. married      c. were married      d. has been married
12. Tomorrow I \_\_\_\_\_ my grandparents.  
a. am going to visit      b. will have visited      c. have visited      d. visit
13. When their first child was born, they \_\_\_\_\_ married for three years.  
a. have been married      b. had been married  
c. will been married      d. will have been married
14. I think the weather \_\_\_\_\_ nice later.  
a. will be      b. be      c. is      d. has been
15. She \_\_\_\_\_ very angry when she knows this.  
a. shall be      b. has been      c. will have been      d. will be
16. We \_\_\_\_\_ a party last Saturday. It was great we invited lots of people.  
a. have      b. have had      c. had      d. had had
17. I was sad when I sold my car. I \_\_\_\_\_ it for a very long time.  
a. am running      b. were running      c. had been running      d. have been running
18. We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. We \_\_\_\_\_ for more than 24 hours.  
a. had been traveling      b. were traveling      c. have traveled      d. traveled
19. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ straight to bed.  
a. had gone      b. have gone      c. went      d. go
20. The man sitting next to me on the plane was nervous because he \_\_\_\_\_ before.  
a. hasn't flown      b. didn't fly      c. hadn't flown      d. wasn't flying

1b	2d	3d	4c	5d	6a	7c	8a	9d	10c
11a	12a	13b	14a	15d	16b	17c	18a	19a	20c

### Exercise 10

1. \_\_\_\_\_ a car when they were living in London?  
a. Have they      b. Did they have      c. Were they having      d. have they had
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ serving meals by the time we get to the restaurant.

- a. will stop                      b. stopped                      c. are stopping                      d. will have stopped
3. Mark was listening to music while his sister\_\_\_\_\_ a book.  
a. read.                      b. reads                      c. is reading                      d. was reading
4. You\_\_\_\_\_ here for my party, won't you?  
a. shall be                      b. won't be                      c. will be                      d. are going to be
5. Can I borrow your bike on Monday? I'm sorry, but\_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. I'll be using                      b. used                      c. use                      d. have used
6. We\_\_\_\_\_ the concert. It was really good.  
a. are enjoying                      b. enjoy                      c. did enjoy                      d. would enjoy
7. It was 10 p.m. Most of the shops\_\_\_\_\_ just\_\_\_\_\_  
a. have/closed                      b. had/closed                      c. has/closed                      d. was closing
8. There's no more apples. We \_\_\_\_\_ them all.  
a. had eaten                      b. ate                      c. eat                      d. have eaten
9. She\_\_\_\_\_ music all day. Now she feels tired.  
a. has been playing                      b. is playing                      c. played                      d. plays
10. After he\_\_\_\_\_ the house, he wrote a letter.  
a. cleans                      b. was cleaning                      c. had cleaned                      d. has cleaned
11. They\_\_\_\_\_ me about it last week.  
a. was telling                      b. told                      c. had told                      d. would tell
12. I\_\_\_\_\_ here at the end of the month.  
a. will leave                      b. would leave                      c. would have left                      d. is leaving
13. I hope everything\_\_\_\_\_ fine.  
a. is                      b. was                      c. would be                      d. will be
14. My grandfather\_\_\_\_\_ many years ago.  
a. had died                      b. has died                      c. died                      d. was dying
15. I\_\_\_\_\_ my son the money for that last week.  
a. gave                      b. given                      c. have given                      d. was given
16. Yesterday I passed by Peter's house, but the front door was closed. He\_\_out.  
a. went                      b. must have gone                      c. has gone                      d. had had
17. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you at 9:00 last night, Mr. Green?  
a. have been                      b. were                      c. will be                      d. are
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ the dishwasher on when heard the shot.  
a. am turning                      b. turned                      c. was turning                      d. turned
19. Now I \_\_\_\_\_ for what I said about you. It wasn't true and I shouldn't have said it  
a. do apologize                      b. apologized                      c. was apologized                      d. apologizing
20. Tim was tired. He \_\_\_\_\_ hard all day.  
a. has been studying                      b. studies                      c. studied                      d. had been studying

1b	2d	3d	4c	5a	6c	7b	8d	9a	10c
11b	12a	13d	14c	15a	16b	17b	18c	19a	20d

Name:	<b>Basis No 2</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>CAUSATIVE FORM</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. I'll have the boys\_\_\_\_\_ the chairs.  
a. paint                      b. to paint                      c. painted                      d. painting
2. I am going to have a new house\_\_\_\_\_  
a. build                      b. to build                      c. built                      d. building
3. Have these flowers\_\_\_\_\_ to her office, please.  
a. taken                      b. taking                      c. take                      d. to take
4. You should have your car\_\_\_\_\_ before going.  
a. servicing                      b. to service                      c. service                      d. serviced
5. I'll have a new dress\_\_\_\_\_ for my daughter.  
a. making                      b. to make                      c. make                      d. made
6. Pupils should have their eyes\_\_\_\_\_ regularly.  
a. tested                      b. to test                      c. test                      d. testing
7. Lisa had the roof\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
a. repair                      b. repaired                      c. to repair                      d. repairing
8. They have just had air conditioning\_\_\_\_\_ in their house.  
a. install                      b. to install                      c. installed                      d. installing
9. We had the room\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday  
a. decorates                      b. had decorated                      c. decorated                      d. decorating
10. The villagers have had the use of this washing machine\_\_\_\_\_ by this engineer.  
a. explain                      b. explained                      c. to explain                      d. explains
11. By\_\_\_\_\_ the housework done, we have time to further our studies.  
a. taking                      b. to have                      c. having                      d. to get
12. The government has had new houses\_\_\_\_\_ in the rural areas.  
a. build                      b. built                      c. to be built                      d. building
13. They had the swamp\_\_\_\_\_ last year.  
a. drain                      b. to drain                      c. cut                      d. to cut
14. She is going to have her wedding dress\_\_\_\_\_  
a. cutting                      b. cuts                      c. cut                      d. to cut
15. It's about time you had your house\_\_\_\_\_  
a. whitewash                      b. whitewashed                      c. whitewashing                      d. to whitewash
16. I'm sorry I'm late, but I \_\_\_\_\_ my watch\_\_\_\_\_ on the way here.  
a. have/cleaned                      b. had/clean                      c. had/cleaned                      d. had/to clean
17. Please have the cleaner\_\_\_\_\_ this meeting room.  
a. sweep                      b. swept                      c. sweeping                      d. to sweep
18. I'd like to have my shoes\_\_\_\_\_ at one.  
a. repair                      b. repairing                      c. repaired                      d. being repaired
19. My grandmother had a tooth\_\_\_\_\_ last week.  
a. fill                      b. filling                      c. filled                      d. to be filled
20. We had the roof\_\_\_\_\_ last year.  
a. mend                      b. mending                      c. mended                      d. being mended

1a	2c	3a	4d	5d	6a	7b	8c	9c	10b
11c	12b	13d	14c	15b	16c	17a	18c	19c	20c

### Exercise 2

1. We have just had the carpenter\_\_\_\_\_ this chair.  
a. made                      b. make                      c. to make                      d. making
2. What did you do this morning? We \_\_\_\_\_ the room whitewashed.

- a. had                      b. have                      c. got to                      d. order
3. I have had my room\_\_\_\_\_ today.  
a. clean                      b. cleaning                      c. cleaned                      d. being cleaned
4. John had just had his brother\_\_\_\_\_ a house for him on Fifth Avenue.  
a. building                      b. build                      c. to build                      d. built
5. Let's have our waiter\_\_\_\_\_ some coffee  
a. bring                      b. to bring                      c. bringing                      d. brought
6. You ought to have your coat\_\_\_\_\_  
a. clean and press                      b. cleaned and pressed  
c. cleaning and pressing                      d. cleaning and pressed
7. The teacher had the students\_\_\_\_\_ their test.  
a. had in                      b. handed in                      c. handing in                      d. having handed in
8. The students got the librarian\_\_\_\_\_ books for them.  
a. buy                      b. to buy                      c. bought                      d. buying
9. Why don't you have that coat\_\_\_\_\_?  
a. cleaned                      b. clean                      c. cleaning                      d. to clean
10. She doesn't like having her picture\_\_\_\_\_  
a. take                      b. taken                      c. taking                      d. to take
11. James had his nose\_\_\_\_\_ in a fight.  
a. break                      b. to break                      c. breaking                      d. broken
12. Frank had his passport\_\_\_\_\_ on a train.  
a. stealing                      b. to steal                      c. stolen                      d. steal
13. Fred had his hat\_\_\_\_\_ off in the wind.  
a. blow                      b. blown                      c. blowing                      d. to blow
14. George had his papers\_\_\_\_\_ at the police station.  
a. take                      b. to take                      c. taking                      d. taken
15. Bill is having his shoes\_\_\_\_\_  
a. shined                      b. to shine                      c. chining                      d. shine
16. I'll have another key\_\_\_\_\_  
a. made                      b. making                      c. to make                      d. make
17. Do you have a newspaper\_\_\_\_\_ to your home?  
a. deliver                      b. delivered                      c. to deliver                      d. delivering
18. I have not had the film\_\_\_\_\_ yet.  
a. develop                      b. to develop                      c. developing                      d. doing
19. She had her hair\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
a. done                      b. do                      c. to do                      d. doing
20. Have her\_\_\_\_\_ these letters, please.  
a. type                      b. to type                      c. typed                      d. typing

1b	2c	3a	4d	5d	6b	7a	8b	9a	10b
11d	12c	13b	14d	15a	16a	17a	18d	19a	20a

Name:	<b>Basis No 3</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>COMPARISONS</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. Peter is the\_\_\_\_\_ student in my class.  
a. taller than                      b. so tall as                      c. the tallest                      d. tallest
2. The deep oceans contain some of the\_\_\_\_\_ of all living creatures.  
a. strangest                      b. strange                      c. as strange as                      d. stranger
3. Jane is not\_\_\_\_\_ her brother.  
a. more intelligent as                      b. intelligent as                      c. so intelligent as                      d. so intelligent that
4. He drives as\_\_\_\_\_ his father does.  
a. careful as                      b. more carefully                      c. the most careful                      d. carefully as
5. What's the\_\_\_\_\_ film you've ever seen?  
a. good                      b. best                      c. better                      d. the best
6. Jane is\_\_\_\_\_ age as Mary.  
a. as same                      b. the most same                      c. the same                      d. more same
7. I'll be there\_\_\_\_\_ I can.  
a. sooner as                      b. no sooner as                      c. as soon as                      d. soonest as
8. Hotels have developed\_\_\_\_\_ restaurants.  
a. as rapidly as                      b. so rapidly that                      c. as rapid as                      d. as rapid than
9. Commercial centres are\_\_\_\_\_ they were many years ago.  
a. as popular than                      b. the most popular.                      c. more popular than                      d. most popular than
10. Computer are considered as \_\_\_\_\_ tools today  
a. much modern than                      b. the most modern                      c. modern as                      d. more modern
11. A supermarket is\_\_\_\_\_ a shopping centre.  
a. less convenient as                      b. not so convenient than  
c. less convenient than                      d. the most convenient as
12. Vietnam becomes\_\_\_\_\_ to foreign tourists.  
a. most and most attractive                      b. the more attractive  
c. much and ore attractive                      d. more and more attractive
13. Can Tho is\_\_\_\_\_ from Saigon than Bien Hoa is.  
a. farther                      b. further                      c. far                      d. farer
14. Bao Yen sings\_\_\_\_\_ than this singer.  
a. well                      b. better                      c. gooder                      d. more good
15. Of all the ball-point pens, which one do you like\_\_\_\_\_?  
a. best                      b. the best                      c. most                      d. the most
16. The\_\_\_\_\_ we start, the sooner we will be back.  
a. early                      b. earliest                      c. earlier                      d. more early
17. The sooner, the\_\_\_\_\_  
a. better                      b. best                      c. good                      d. more good.
18. The harder this farmer works, \_\_\_\_\_ he becomes.  
a. the poorest                      b. the poorer                      c. the more poor                      d. poorer
19. My father is\_\_\_\_\_ as yours.  
a. old                      b. as old                      c. older                      d. so old
20. HCM city is\_\_\_\_\_ than Hanoi.  
a. large                      b. largest                      c. more large                      d. larger

1d	2a	3c	4d	5b	6c	7c	8a	9b	10b
11c	12d	13a	14b	15a	16c	17a	18b	19b	20d

## Exercise 2

1. She is the\_\_\_\_\_ daughter in the family.  
a. older                      b. more old                      c. eldest                      d. oldest
2. She speaks English as\_\_\_\_\_ as you.  
a. clear                      b. clearly                      c. clearness                      d. very clear

3. HCM city is \_\_\_\_\_ than Nha Trang  
a. more large      b. as large      c. not so large      d. larger
4. Your pencil is \_\_\_\_\_ as mine.  
a. as sharp      b. not sharp      c. sharper      d. sharp
5. This car is \_\_\_\_\_ than mine.  
a. less expensive      b. as expensive      c. more rich      d. not so expensive
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ he is, the more miserable he gets.  
a. richer      b. more riches      c. more rich      d. none is correct
7. He is the \_\_\_\_\_ student in this class.  
a. very intelligent      b. most intelligent      c. more intelligent      d. less intelligent
8. Despite its smaller size, the Indian Ocean \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic Ocean.  
a. as deep as      b. is the same deep as      c. deeper as      d. is as deep as
9. Sharon \_\_\_\_\_ from other women I know.  
a. different      b. as different      c. differs      d. more different
10. This one is prettier, but it costs \_\_\_\_\_ as the one.  
a. as much as      b. twice as much      c. as many      d. twice as many
11. You can take \_\_\_\_\_ books as you want.  
a. as many      b. as much      c. so much      d. too many
12. Of the two sisters, Linda \_\_\_\_\_  
a. is beautiful      b. the most beautiful      c. is more beautiful      d. is so beautiful as
13. Tuition at an American university runs \_\_\_\_\_ one thousand dollars a semester.  
a. so high as      b. as high to      c. as high as      d. as high than
14. \_\_\_\_\_ I get to know her, the more I like her.  
a. For more      b. More      c. The more      d. The most
15. I would have paid \_\_\_\_\_ for my car if the salesman had insisted, because I really wanted it.  
a. as much twice      b. much twice      c. twice as much      d. times two
16. The \_\_\_\_\_ students do not always do well in tests.  
a. brighter      b. more bright      c. more brighter      d. brighter more
17. The noise in Rome is \_\_\_\_\_ worse than in Florence.  
a. much      b. far      c. A and B are wrong      d. A and B are correct
18. \_\_\_\_\_ tobacco was sold in 1983 as in 1982,  
a. Not as much      b. Not as many      c. Not much      d. Not many
19. He eats with chopsticks \_\_\_\_\_ the Chinese.  
a. such      b. as if      c. like      d. as
20. Instead of slowing down, he drove \_\_\_\_\_  
a. more fastly      b. faster      c. more faster      d. faster more

1d	2b	3d	4a	5a	6a	7b	8d	9c	10b
11a	12c	13c	14c	15c	16a	17d	18a	19c	20b

### Exercise 3

1. My new glasses cost me \_\_\_\_\_ the last pair that I bought.  
a. times three      b. three times more than  
c. three times as much as      d. as much three times as
2. Although she is very popular, she is not \_\_\_\_\_ her sister.  
a. pretty as      b. as pretty      c. prettier than      d. more pretty than
3. We are going to Florida as soon as \_\_\_\_\_ taking our final exams.

- a. were finish      b. we'll finish      c. we'd finish      d. we finish
4. This new soap is not much \_\_\_\_\_ the others that I have tried.  
a. different      b. different than      c. different from      d. different that
5. Ms. Jones isn't as nice \_\_\_\_\_ Ms. Smith.  
a. as      b. for      c. like      d. to
6. The rooms in Graduate Towers are \_\_\_\_\_ Patterson Hall.  
a. larger than      b. larger than that of      c. larger than those in      d. larger than in
7. We'll be there as soon as we \_\_\_\_\_ a babysitter for our son.  
a. will find      b. found      c. find      d. are finding
8. The final will be \_\_\_\_\_ the midterm.  
a. alike      b. like      c. same      d. similar
9. They are \_\_\_\_\_ my other neighbors.  
a. more friendlier than      b. friendly than      c. friendlier as      d. more friendly than
10. The lab is \_\_\_\_\_ from the bus stop than the library.  
a. far      b. farther      c. further      d. b and c
11. The \_\_\_\_\_ accident in the history of the city occurred last night on the Freeway.  
a. badest      b. most bad      c. worse      d. worst
12. He finished the test \_\_\_\_\_ of all.  
a. rapidly      b. the most rapidly      c. most rapidly      d. more rapidly
13. Many chemicals react \_\_\_\_\_ in acid solutions.  
a. more quick      b. more quickly      c. quicker      d. as quickly more
14. The younger you are \_\_\_\_\_ it is to learn.  
a. easier      b. you are easier      c. the easier      d. the easy
15. It's becoming \_\_\_\_\_ to find a job.  
a. more difficult and more      b. more and more difficult  
c. most and more difficult      d. more difficult than
16. \_\_\_\_\_ electricity you use, \_\_\_\_\_ your bill will be.  
a. The more/ the higher      b. The most/ the higher  
c. The more/ the high      d. More/ higher
17. The more I got to know Tom, \_\_\_\_\_ I liked him.  
a. least      b. the less      c. the least      d. the fewer
18. The rooms in the front \_\_\_\_\_ noisier than those in the back.  
a. are more      b. are littler      c. are very      d. are much
19. \_\_\_\_\_ you are, \_\_\_\_\_ you concentrate  
a. Tired/ the least hard      b. The more tired/ the harder  
c. The tireder/ the harder      d. The tired/ the harder
20. I will return your notes as soon as \_\_\_\_\_ copying them.  
a. I will finish      b. I finish      c. I do finish      d. I be finished

1c	2c	3d	4c	5a	6c	7c	8b	9d	10d
11d	12b	13b	14c	15b	16a	17b	18d	19a	20c

#### Exercise 4

1. The younger you are, \_\_\_\_\_ it is to learn.  
a. easier      b. you are easier      c. the easier      d. the easy
2. \_\_\_\_\_ porpoises and dolphins, whales are mammals.  
a. As      b. Also      c. Like      d. When



3. The Romans used central heating systems very much like\_\_\_\_\_.  
a. those of today      b. to day's do      c. those they do  
d. the systems which are now.
4. The higher one rises in the atmosphere, \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature generally becomes.  
a. colder than      b. the colder than      c. the colder      d. is colder
5. Nerve cells, or neurons, \_\_\_\_\_ in the human body.  
a. the most complex cells are      b. are the most complex cells  
c. most complex the cell are      d. most are the complex cells
6. The United States spends more money on advertising\_\_\_\_\_ country in the world.  
a. other      b. other than      c. than any other      d. while other
7. The rooms in the front\_\_\_\_\_ noisier than those in the back.  
a. are more      b. are little      c. are very      d. are much
8. A microscope can reveal vastly\_\_\_\_\_ detail than is visible to the naked eye.  
a. than      b. than more      c. more than      d. more
9. \_\_\_\_\_plants, which manufacture their own food, animals obtain nourishment by acquiring and digesting their food.  
a. Unlike      b. Different      c. Whereas      a. As much
10. Of all the candidates, Peter is probably\_\_\_\_\_  
a. the less qualified      b. the qualified less  
c. the most little qualified      d. the least qualified
11. These two girls\_\_\_\_\_ that I can't tell them apart.  
a. are so like      b. are so alike      c. are too alike      d. alike enough
12. This house is\_\_\_\_\_ the others we've seen.  
a. father more expensive than      b. far more expensive than  
c. far most expensive      d. further more expensive
13. Apart from Pluto, the outer planets\_\_\_\_\_ the inner planets and are made mainly of lighter materials such as hydrogen and helium.  
a. are larger than      b. are the largest      c. large than      d. are large
14. This is\_\_\_\_\_ man of all I've been known.  
a. best      b. better      c. good      d. the best
15. \_\_\_\_\_ we finish the project, \_\_\_\_\_ we can start the next one.  
a. The soonest/ the sooner      b. The sooner/ the most soon  
c. The sooner/ the sooner      d. The soonest/ the soonest
16. That child behaves\_\_\_\_\_ of all  
a. the most carelessly      b. the more carelessly  
c. more carelessly than      d. as carelessly
17. It is\_\_\_\_\_ that I have read it twice.  
a. such an interesting book      b. so interesting a book  
c. too interesting a book      d. a or b
18. For many children, nothing seems so exciting\_\_\_\_\_ their first airplane ride.  
a. so does      b. as      c. same      d. is
19. A baby might show fear of an unfamiliar adult, \_\_\_\_\_ he is likely t smile and reach our to another infant.  
a. if      b. whenever      c. so that      d. whereas
20. The deep oceans contain some of the\_\_\_\_\_ of all living creatures.  
a. strangest      b. strange      c. as strange as      d. stranger



- a. sooner than                      b. as soonest as                      c. so sooner as                      d. as soon as
19. This one is pretties, but it costs\_\_\_\_\_ as the other one.  
a. as much as                      b. twice as much                      c. as many                      d. as soon as
20. Although both are mammals, the early stages of development on the part f placentals fifer from \_\_\_\_\_ of marsupials.  
a. that                      b. it                      c. those                      d. this

1c	2b	3a	4c	5a	6b	7a	8a	9b	10d
11c	12c	13c	14a	15a	16d	17b	18d	19b	20c

### Exercise 6

1. The man was in \_\_\_\_\_ health that the family began to consider whether he could continue to live in his home.  
a. such bad                      b. too bad                      c. such worst                      d. so badly
2. A dancer, while always graceful and precise in her movements, trains \_\_\_\_\_ any other athlete.  
a. as strenuously                      b. more strenuously as  
c. as strenuously as                      d. as strenuously that
3. The more I got to know Tom, \_\_\_\_\_ I liked him.  
a. least                      b. the less                      c. the least                      d. the fewer
4. There are not \_\_\_\_\_ violin makers today \_\_\_\_\_ there were in the past.  
a. as many/ as                      b. as much/ as                      c. like many as                      d. similar many/to
5. Although \_\_\_\_\_ other respect, birds and insects have both evolved efficient flying capacities.  
a. are dissimilar in almost every                      b. is dissimilar in almost  
c. dissimilar in almost every                      d. it is dissimilar in almost every
6. \_\_\_\_\_ electricity you use, \_\_\_\_\_ your bill will be.  
a. The more/ the higher                      b. The most/ the higher  
c. The more/ the high                      d. More/ higher
7. Because aluminum is lighter and cheaper \_\_\_\_\_, it is frequently used for high-tension power transmission.  
a. such a nice weather                      b. too nice weather                      c. such nice weather                      d. such weather nice
8. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that I would like to go to the beach.  
a. such a nice weather                      b. too nice weather                      c. such nice weather                      d. such weather nice
9. The treasures came from a second, \_\_\_\_\_ room.  
a. the smallest                      b. as small as                      c. much smaller                      d. more small
10. He \_\_\_\_\_ to be offered the job.  
a. was such inexperienced                      b. was too inexperienced  
c. not experienced enough                      d. b or c
11. Today shire horses are seen more and more in their traditional role \_\_\_\_\_ work horse.  
a. alike                      b. as                      c. like                      d. as if
12. This book is \_\_\_\_\_ the one I read last month.  
a. less much interesting                      b. the less interesting  
c. much less than interesting                      d. much less interesting than
13. Mrs. Harrison is \_\_\_\_\_ he owns many palaces.  
a. so a rich man that                      b. such an rich man that  
c. such a rich man that                      d. that so rich a man
14. He \_\_\_\_\_ I was scared.  
a. drover too fast thatb. drove so fastly that                      c. drove so fast thatd. drove such fast that

15. \_\_\_\_\_ the man gets, \_\_\_\_\_ he becomes.  
 a. The more old/ the more weak      b. The order/ the weaker  
 c. The older/ the weakest      d. older/ weaker
16. The possibility of being sued is \_\_\_\_\_ of construction companies.  
 a. often the greatest fear      b. often the fear greatest  
 c. the greatest often fear      d. the often greatest fear
17. \_\_\_\_\_ was debated, the more people became involved.  
 a. The longer the issue      b. The longer issue      c. The long issue      d. The longest issue
18. Her fever is \_\_\_\_\_ to ignore  
 a. too much high      b. high too much      c. too high      d. so high
19. In the past six months, the company has already received twice \_\_\_\_\_ in the gross revenues as it earned in the entire preceding year.  
 a. as much      b. more      c. as many      d. as more
20. The cook make \_\_\_\_\_ that some people were not served  
 a. so much food      b. so few food      c. so little food      d. too little

1d	2b	3d	4d	5c	6a	7b	8c	9c	10b
11c	12d	13c	14c	15b	16a	17a	18c	19a	20c

Name:	<b>Basis No 4</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>TAG-QUESTIONS</b>	

1. We should call Rita, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a. should we      b. shouldn't we      c. shall we      d. should not we
2. Monkeys can's sing \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a. can they      b. can't they      c. can it      d. can't it
3. These books aren't yours, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a. are these      b. aren't these      c. are they      d. aren't they
4. That's Bod's \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a. is that      b. isn't that      c. are they      d. aren't they
5. No one died in the accident, \_\_\_\_\_? (British English)  
 a. didn't they      b. did he      c. didn't he      d. did they?
6. I'm right, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a. aren't I      b. amn't I      c. isn't I      d. not I am
7. They never came to class late, and \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. neither did we      b. so did we      c. we did either      d. neither we did
8. My wife had never been to Hue, an \_\_\_\_\_ I.  
 a. never have      b. so did we      c. we did either      d. neither we did
9. They are studying pronunciation with Mr. Brown, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a. are they      b. aren't they      c. do they      d. don't they
10. She should have obeyed her parents, \_\_\_\_\_ she?  
 a. should      b. should have      c. shouldn't have      d. shouldn't
11. My father doesn't speak Chinese, and \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. my mother does neither      b. my mother doesn't too  
 c. neither does my mother      d. so doesn't my mother
12. The air-hostess knows the time she has been here, \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. does she      b. isn't it      c. doesn't she      d. did she'
13. This is the second time she has been here, \_\_\_\_\_?

- a. has she                      b. hasn't she                      c. isn't this                      d. isn't it
14. They must do as they are told, \_\_\_\_\_  
a. so must I                      b. I must either                      c. I do too                      d. I am too
15. 'I don't like strong coffee' 'No, \_\_\_\_\_'  
a. I don't too                      b. either don't I                      c. me either                      d. neither don't I
16. He hardly has anything nowadays, \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. has he                      b. doesn't he                      c. does she                      d. hasn't she
17. You've never been in Italy, \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. haven't you                      b. have you                      c. been you                      d. had you
18. Sally turned in her report, \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. had she                      b. did she                      c. hadn't see                      d. didn't she
19. You have a ticket to the game, \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. do you                      b. haven't you                      c. don't you                      d. have you
20. Tom knows Alice Reed, \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. doesn't he                      b. does he                      c. is he                      d. isn't he

1b	2a	3c	4d	5d	6a	7a	8c	9b	10d
11b	12c	13d	14a	15c	16a	17b	18d	19c	20a

Name:	<b>Basis No 4 FREQUENTATIVE FORM</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

1. Astronauts\_\_\_\_\_ in their spaceship, but they frequently work outside now.  
a. were used to stay    b. used to stay                      c. were staying                      d. had used to stay
2. People \_\_\_\_\_ that the earth is round before.  
a. were not used to believe                      b. used to believing  
c. would not use to believe                      d. did not use to believe
3. Tuberculosis\_\_\_\_\_ incurable before.  
a. use to be thought    b. used to be thought    c. used to think                      d. use to think
4. Formerly babies\_\_\_\_\_ of whooping cough.  
a. have died                      b. used to die                      c. would die                      d. both b and c
5. These city girls are used\_\_\_\_\_ in the field.  
a. to work                      b. used to lie                      c. would like                      d. to working
6. Newton\_\_\_\_\_ scientific books when a boy.  
a. used to read                      b. has read                      c. had read                      d. had been reading
7. I am sorry I am not\_\_\_\_\_ fast.  
a. used to drive                      b. used to driving                      c. use to drive                      d. use to driving
8. Frank used to work in a small shop. He\_\_\_\_\_  
a. doesn't any more    b. still does                      c. is now                      d. had never done anything else
9. Roy Trenton used to work in a small shop. He \_\_\_\_\_  
a. is driving it                      b. doesn't drive t any more    c. likes it                      d. didn't like it
10. Roy Trenton use to drive a taxi. This means he\_\_\_\_\_  
a. use to lie                      b. used live                      c. used to living                      d. used to live
11. I\_\_\_\_\_ in Jakarta. I've lived here all my life.  
a. am used to living    b. used to living                      c. use to live                      d. am used to live
12. Jane\_\_\_\_\_ for the telephone company, but now she has a job at the post office.  
a. used to working    b. used to work                      c. is used to working    d. am used to work
13. This work doesn't bother me. I \_\_\_\_\_ hard. I've worked hard all my life.  
a. used to working    b. used to work                      c. am used to working    d. am used to work
14. Dick\_\_\_\_\_ a moustache, but he doesn't any more. He shaved it off because his wife didn't like it.  
a. used to having                      b. is used to having    c. was used to having    d. used to have



- a. were/would meet    b. had been/ would meet  
c. were/ would have met    d. had been/ would have met
14. If I was offered the job, I think I \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. take    b. will take    c. would take    d. would have taken
15. I would be very surprised if he\_\_\_\_\_  
a. refused    b refused    c. had refuse    d. would refuse
16. Many people would be out of work if that factory\_\_\_\_\_ down.  
a. closes    b. closed    c. had closed    d. would close
17. If she sold her car, she\_\_\_\_\_ much money.  
a. gets    b. will get    c. would get    d. would have got
18. They would be disappointed if we\_\_\_\_\_  
a. hadn't come    b. wouldn't come    c. don't come    d. didn't come
19. Would George be angry if I\_\_\_\_\_ his bicycle without asking?  
a. take    b. took    c. had taken    d. would take
20. She\_\_\_\_\_ terribly upset if I lost thing ring.  
a. will be    b. would be    c. were    d. had been

1b	2a	3d	4a	5d	6c	7b	8c	9a	10b
11b	12a	13d	14c	15b	16b	17c	18d	19b	20b

## Exercise 2

1. If someone\_\_\_\_\_ in here with a gun, I'd be very frightened  
a. would walk    b. had walked    c. walks    d. walked
2. That would happen if you\_\_\_\_\_ to work tomorrow?  
a. don't go    b. won't go    c. didn't go    d. wouldn't go
3. I'm sure she\_\_\_\_\_ if you explained the situation to her.  
a. would understand    b. will understand    c. had understood    d. understood
4. We'll get wet if we\_\_\_\_\_ out  
a. go    b. went    c. did go    d. had gone
5. If I go shopping, I \_\_\_\_\_ some food.  
a. buy    b. will buy    c. would buy    d. would have bought
6. If they\_\_\_\_\_ soon, I'm not going to wait.  
a. hadn't come    b. won't come    c. don't come    d. didn't come
7. If I find it, I \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
a. will tell    b. would tell    c. had told    d. told
8. What would you do if you\_\_\_\_\_ a million dollars?  
a. would win    b. win    c. had won    d. won
9. They'd be hurt if I\_\_\_\_\_  
a. don't go    b. didn't go    c. hadn't gone    d. wouldn't go
10. Sarah probably wouldn't get the job if she\_\_\_\_\_  
a. applies    b. had applied    c. applied    d. would apply
11. If we took the 6:30 train, we\_\_\_\_\_ too early.  
a. would have arrived    b. will arrive    c. arrived    d. would arrive
12. If I had known you were in hospital, I \_\_\_\_\_ to see you.  
a. will go    b. would go    c. went    d. would have gone
13. If I\_\_\_\_\_, I would have said hello.  
a. had seen    b. saw    c. see    d. would see

14. If there \_\_\_\_\_ the rice fields could have been more productive.  
a. had been enough water                      b. were enough water  
c. would be enough water                      d. are enough water
15. The patient could not recover unless he \_\_\_\_\_ an operation.  
a. had undergone      b. would undergo      c. underwent              d. undergoing
16. If she \_\_\_\_\_ him, she would be very happy.  
a. would meet              b. will meet              c. is meeting              d. should meet
17. If he \_\_\_\_\_ a thorough knowledge of English, he could have applied for this post.  
a. had had                  b. had                      c. has                      d. has had
18. If I had enough money, I \_\_\_\_\_ abroad to improve my English.  
a. will go                  b. would go              c. should go              d. should have go to
19. The bench would collapse if they \_\_\_\_\_ on it.  
a. stood                      b. stand                      c. standing              d. stands
20. \_\_\_\_\_ she agreed, you would have done it.  
a. If                          b. Had                      c. Should                  d. Would

1d	2c	3a	4a	5b	6c	7a	8d	9b	10c
11d	12d	13a	14a	15c	16d	17a	18b	19a	20b

### Exercise 3

1. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ you wanted to invest money in business.  
a. had know              b. knew                      c. have known              d. know
2. If I were to leave my country, I \_\_\_\_\_ disappointed.  
a. probably be              b. would have been              c. will be              d. would be
3. If he hadn't wasted too much time, he \_\_\_\_\_ in his examination.  
a. would fail              b. wouldn't fail              c. wouldn't have failed      d. won't fail
4. If I had take that English course, I \_\_\_\_\_ much progress.  
a. had made              b. would have made      c. made                      d. would make
5. If I were in your place, I \_\_\_\_\_ a trip to England.  
a. will make              b. had made              c. would make              d. made
6. If you inherited a million pounds, what \_\_\_\_\_ with the money?  
a. do you do              b. will you do              c. would you do              d. are you going to do
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ out if I hadn't been so tired.  
a. will go                  b. went                      c. would have gone              d. would go
8. If he had been looking where he was going, he \_\_\_\_\_ into the wall.  
a. wouldn't have walked      b. didn't walk              c. won't walk              d. wouldn't walk
9. If I \_\_\_\_\_ a camera, I would have taken some pictures.  
a. have                      b. had                      c. would have              d. had had
10. If I \_\_\_\_\_ hungry, I \_\_\_\_\_ something.  
a. had been, would eat              b. had been/ would have eaten  
c. were/ would eat                  d. were/ would have eaten
11. If I \_\_\_\_\_ to the party last nigh, I \_\_\_\_\_ tired now.  
a. had gone/ would be              b. had gone/ would have been  
c. went/ would be                  d. went/ would have been
12. Tom.... for the examination last week if he \_\_\_\_\_ that it would be so difficult.  
a. wouldn't enter/ had known              b. wouldn't have entered/ knew  
c. wouldn't have entered/ had known              d. wouldn't enter/ knew



13. Tom got to the station in time.  
If he \_\_\_\_\_ the train, he \_\_\_\_\_ late for his interview.  
a. missed/ would have been                      b. had missed/ would be  
c. missed/ would be                                  d. had missed/ would have been
14. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ longer if her other had let her.  
a. could have stayed              b. could stay                      c. stays                      d. stayed
15. If only Tom \_\_\_\_\_ sick today.  
a. weren't                      b. hasn't been                      c. hasn't                      d. didn't
16. If I missed the bus, I \_\_\_\_\_ walk to work.  
a. would have to              b. will have to                      c. would have                      d. will have
17. The bus won't stop \_\_\_\_\_ you ring the bell.  
a. when                      b. if                      c. it not                      d. unless
18. If she talked less, people \_\_\_\_\_ her more.  
a. will like                      b. like                      c. liked                      d. would like
19. If Margaret hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she \_\_\_\_\_ injured.  
a. has been                      b. would have been                      c. would be                      d. would have been
20. If I had been you, I \_\_\_\_\_ to the manager  
a. have complained                                  b. would have complained  
c. had complained                                  d. would complained

1a	2d	3c	4b	5c	6c	7c	8a	9d	10b
11a	12c	13d	14a	15a	16a	17d	18d	19d	20b

#### Exercise 4

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ as I told you, you \_\_\_\_\_ in such predicament now.  
a. did/ would not be                                  b. had done/ had not been  
c. do/ would not be                                  d. had done/ would not be
2. Come and work for my company if you \_\_\_\_\_ better to do  
a. have nothing                      b. will have nothing                      c. had something                      d. had nothing
3. If you had done as I told you, I think you \_\_\_\_\_  
a. would succeed                                  b. would have succeeded  
c. could succeed                                  d. had succeeded
4. If he had got half a mark more, he \_\_\_\_\_ in the exam.  
a. wouldn't fail                      b. wouldn't have failed                      c. won't fail                      d. won't be failing
5. If it \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow, we may postpone going.  
a. rains                      b. will rain                      c. shall rain                      d. raining
6. If you hadn't watched that late movie last night, you \_\_\_\_\_ sleepy now.  
a. wouldn't have been                                  b. wouldn't be  
c. might have not been                                  d. wouldn't have been being
7. If you \_\_\_\_\_ as I told you, you \_\_\_\_\_ sorry now.  
a. did/ would not be                                  b. had done/ had not been  
c. do/ would not be                                  d. had done/ would not be
8. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ him now!  
a. am staying                      b. will stay                      c. do stay                      d. would stay
9. If I \_\_\_\_\_ I'll let you know.  
a. am staying                      b. will stay                      c. do stay                      d. would stay
10. If only he \_\_\_\_\_ me a chance, I could have told him the truth.

- a. gave                      b. has given                      c. could give                      d. had given
11. Get me a glass of lemonade, if you \_\_\_\_\_ to the kitchen.  
a. go                      b. will go                      c. going                      d. went
12. If I \_\_\_\_\_ you, I'd save some of your lottery winning.  
a. be                      b. am                      c. were                      d. was
13. If the chair \_\_\_\_\_ break, Mr. Dow can fix it for us.  
a. might                      b. should                      c. may                      d. can
14. If the car \_\_\_\_\_ larger, we would have bought it.  
a. had been                      b. has been                      c. have been                      d. been
15. If only my father \_\_\_\_\_ work the weekends.  
a. hasn't to                      b. didn't have to                      c. hadn't to                      d. doesn't have to
16. If we by a small car, we \_\_\_\_\_ as much room.  
a. won't have                      b. had done                      c. hadn't                      d. a or b
17. They helped me a lot. I don't know what I \_\_\_\_\_ without their help.  
a. have done                      b. had done                      c. would have done                      d. will do
18. If she weren't stupid, she \_\_\_\_\_ fail.  
a. won't                      b. shall not                      c. wouldn't                      d. don't
19. It's a dangerous would out there. What if you \_\_\_\_\_ into an accident?  
a. get                      b. got                      c. would get                      d. are getting
20. If you \_\_\_\_\_ your shopping there, someone might steal it.  
a. left                      b. are left                      c. to leave                      d. leave

1d	2a	3b	4b	5a	6b	7d	8b	9c	10d
11a	12c	13b	14a	15b	16d	17c	18c	19b	20d

### Exercise 5

1. "These figures are too complicated to work our in your head". Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_ we had a computer".  
a. better                      b. only                      c. rally                      d. that
2. The car broke down. But for that we \_\_\_\_\_ in time.  
a. had been                      b. were                      c. will be                      d. would have been
3. "What are you doing later this afternoon?" "Oh, \_\_\_\_\_ the game finishes, I'll go home, I expect.  
a. if                      b. in case                      c. had left                      d. b or c
4. You can camp here provided you \_\_\_\_\_ no mess.  
a. leave                      b. leaf                      c. had left                      d. b or c
5. We must be early or else we \_\_\_\_\_ a seat.  
a. get                      b. will get                      c. won't get                      d. wouldn't get
6. If I had take his advice, \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
a. would have been rich                      b. am rich                      c. will be rich                      d. would be
7. If he \_\_\_\_\_ to me, I can't help him.  
a. won't listen                      b. refuses to listen                      c. didn't listen                      d. a or b
8. The plane I intended to catch crashed and everyone was killed. If I \_\_\_\_\_ that plane, I would be dead now.  
a. caught                      b. had caught                      c. catch                      d. am catching
9. If only I wasn't so fat, I \_\_\_\_\_ able to get into these trousers.  
a. will be                      b. would be                      c. can be                      d. am
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you obeyed orders, this disaster would not have happened.

- a. If                                      b. Did                                      c. Had                                      d. For
11. If energy\_\_\_\_\_ inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.  
a. is                                      b. will be                                      c. were                                      d. would be
12. We\_\_\_\_\_ the game if we'd had a few ore minutes.  
a. might have won                      b. won                                      c. had won                                      d. will win
13. I\_\_\_\_\_ William with me if I had known you and he didn't get along with each other.  
a. hadn't brought                      b. didn't bring                                      c. wouldn't have brought                      d. won't bring
14. The lecturer last night didn't know what he was talking about, but if Dr. Mason\_\_\_\_\_, I would have listed carefully.  
a. had been lecturing                      b. was lecturing                                      c. would lecture                                      d. lectured
15. If you\_\_\_\_\_ to my advice in the first place, you wouldn't be in this mess right now.  
a. listen                                      b. will listen                                      c. had listened                                      d. listened
16. \_\_\_\_\_ interested in that subject, I wouldn't try to learn more about it.  
a. Were I                                      b. Should I                                      c. I was                                      d. if I am
17. If I\_\_\_\_\_ the same problems you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.  
a. have                                      b. would have                                      c. had had                                      d. should have
18. I\_\_\_\_\_ you sooner had someone told me you were in the hospital.  
a. would have visited                      b. visited                                      c. had visited                                      d. visit
19. \_\_\_\_\_more help, I could call my neighbor.  
a. Needed                                      b. Should I need                                      c. I have needed                                      d. I should need
20. \_\_\_\_\_ then what I know today, I would have saved myself a lot of time ad trouble over the years.  
a. Had I known                                      b. Did I know                                      c. If know                                      d. If would know

1b	2d	3d	4a	5c	6d	7d	8b	9b	10c
11c	12a	13c	14a	15c	16a	17c	18a	19b	20a

### Exercise 6

1. Its good that Ann reminded me about Tom's birthday.  
I\_\_\_\_\_ if she\_\_\_\_\_ me.  
a. would for get hadn't reminded                      b. would have forgotten/ didn't remind  
c. would forget/ didn't remind                      d. would have forgotten/ hadn't reminded
2. I\_\_\_\_\_ you a postcard while I was on holiday if I \_\_\_\_\_ your address.  
a. would have sent/ had had                      b. would have send/ had  
c. would send/ had                      d. would send/ had had
3. You won't pass the examination\_\_\_\_\_ you study more.  
a. as long as                      b. unless                      c. if                      d. whether
4. Joe can't here\_\_\_\_\_ you shout.  
a. if                      b. providing                      c. unless                      d. whether
5. You can use my car\_\_\_\_\_ you drive carefully.  
a. whether                      b. until                      c. unless                      d. as long as
6. I'm playing tennis tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ it's raining.  
a. provided                      b. if                      c. as long as                      d. unless
7. We're going to start painting the house tomorrow\_\_\_\_\_ it's not raining.  
a. provided                      b. unless                      c. whether                      d. until
8. You can smoke in here\_\_\_\_\_ you leave a window open to let the smoke out.  
a. whether                      b. unless                      c. as long as                      d. until

9. George won't lend you money\_\_\_\_\_ you promise to pay him back.  
a. providing                      b. unless                      c. provided                      d. as long as
10. The children can stay here\_\_\_\_\_ they don't make too much noise.  
a. whether                      b. providing                      c. unless                      d. until
11. I'm going now\_\_\_\_\_ you want me to stay.  
a. unless                      b. providing                      c. provided                      d. as long as
12. If you can give me one good reason for your acting like this, \_\_\_\_\_ this incident again.  
a. I will never mention                      b. I never mention  
c. will never mention d. I don't mention
13. I didn't know you were asleep. Otherwise, I \_\_\_\_\_ so much noise when I came in.  
a. didn't make                      b. wouldn't have made c. won't make                      d. don't make
14. Unless you\_\_\_\_\_ all of my questions, I can't do anything to help you.  
a. answered                      b. answer                      c. would answer                      d. are answering
15. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I\_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. would never have believed b. don't believe c. hadn't believed d. can't believe
16. If Jake\_\_\_\_\_ to go on the trip, would you have gone?  
a. doesn't agree                      b. didn't agree                      c. hadn't agree                      d. wouldn't agree
17. If I could speak Spanish, I\_\_\_\_\_ next year studying in Mexico.  
a. would spend                      b. would have spent c. had spent                      d. will spend
18. It would have been a much more serious accident\_\_\_\_\_ fast at the time.  
a. had she been driving b. was she driving c. she had driven                      d. she drove
19. "Can I borrow your car for this evening?".  
"Sure, but Nora's using it right now. If she\_\_\_\_\_ it back in time you're welcome to borrow it".  
a. brought                      b. would bring                      c. will bring                      d. brings
20. I didn't get home until well after midnight last night. Otherwise, I \_\_\_\_\_ your call.  
a. returned                      b. had returned                      c. would return                      d. would have returned

1b	2a	3b	4c	5d	6d	7a	8c	9b	10b
11a	12a	13b	14b	15a	16c	17a	18a	19d	20d

### Exercise 7

1. If Mr. Harris\_\_\_\_\_ single, I could introduce him your sister.  
a. had been                      b. were                      c. would be                      d. is
2. If you don't keep the receipt, the shop\_\_\_\_\_ you a refund.  
a. wouldn't give                      b. wouldn't have given c. do you choose                      d. you would choose
3. If someone offered you those books, which one\_\_\_\_\_?  
a. would you choose b. did you chose                      c. do you choose                      d. you would choose
4. I feel so hopeless. If only I\_\_\_\_\_ the language.  
a. could speak                      b. speak                      c. had spoken                      d. b or c
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Tom, I would refuse.  
a. If I                      b. If were I                      c. Am I                      d. Were I
6. If only David had been a bit ore careful, \_\_\_\_\_ have been all right.  
a. would                      b. he'd                      c. he would                      d. b or c
7. \_\_\_\_\_ very upset if you turn down his offer of help.  
a. Is                      b. He'll be                      c. Will be                      d. He would be
8. If you see Tom tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_ him to ring me?  
a. do you ask                      b. must you ask                      c. ought you ask                      d. could you ask

9. If they \_\_\_\_\_ the museum, we'd better go there today.  
a. haven't seen      b. didn't see      c. don't see      d. a or c
10. If I \_\_\_\_\_, I would have to thank all of you.  
a. am to succeed      b. were to succeed      c. succeeded      d. b or c
11. If you \_\_\_\_\_ for another night, I'll ask the manager to give you a better room.  
a. stay      b. stayed      c. are staying      d. will stay
12. If \_\_\_\_\_ along, I might have died.  
a. not came      b. hadn't come      c. he hadn't come      d. hadn't he come
13. \_\_\_\_\_ to apologize now, I would forgive her.  
a. If she were      b. Were she      c. She were      d. a or b
14. If I could speak Spanish, I \_\_\_\_\_ next year studying in Mexico.  
a. will spend      b. had spent      c. would spend      d. would have spent
15. If energy \_\_\_\_\_ inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.  
a. is      b. were      c. will be      d. would be
16. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to my advice in the first place, you wouldn't be in this mess right now.  
a. listen      b. will listen      c. listened      d. had listened
17. \_\_\_\_\_ more help, I could call my neighbour.  
a. Should I need      b. Needed      c. I have needed      d. I should need
18. I didn't know you were asleep. Otherwise, I \_\_\_\_\_ in the room, I would have been killed.  
a. don't make      b. didn't make      c. won't make      d. wouldn't have make
19. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to talk loudly, I will have to ask you to leave.  
a. continue      b. continued      c. will continue      d. could continue
20. A huge tree crashed through the roof and broke my bed, \_\_\_\_\_ in the room, I would have been killed.  
a. Should I be      b. Had I been      c. Would I been      d. Would I have been

1b	2d	3a	4a	5d	6d	7b	8d	9a	10d
11c	12c	13d	14c	15b	16d	17a	18d	19a	20b

### Exercise 8

1. We're going to be late if \_\_\_\_\_  
a. we not leave right now      b. didn't leave  
c. won't leave      d. we don't leave
2. If I meet an alien from outer space, I \_\_\_\_\_ him to my home.  
a. will invite      b. would invite      c. invite      d. invited
3. If we \_\_\_\_\_ more time, we'd plant a garden.  
a. have      b. has      c. had      d. having
4. If I had lived in the nineteenth century, \_\_\_\_\_ a horse and a carriage.  
a. I'd have owned      b. I would have owned  
c. I would have owned      d. a or c
5. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to be chosen for the job, you'll have to be experienced in the field.  
a. want      b. wanted      c. had wanted      d. wants
6. If the doctor had arrived sooner, the boy \_\_\_\_\_  
a. might be saved      b. have been saved  
c. was saved      d. might have been saved
7. If you just approach the job with the right attitude, things \_\_\_\_\_ well.  
a. would have turned out      b. will turn out

- c. would turn out    d. turns out
8. If my candidate had won the election, I \_\_\_\_\_ happy now.  
a. am                                      b. would be                                      c. was                                      d. can be
9. I wish Janet\_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting this afternoon.  
a. came                                      b. will come                                      c. can come                                      d. could come
10. I\_\_\_\_\_ you to the woman I was speaking with, but I couldn't think of her name.  
a. will introduce                                      b. would introduce  
c. would have introduced                                      d. couldn't have introduced
11. If you\_\_\_\_\_, I would have brought my friends over to your house this evening to watch TV, but I didn't want to bother you.  
a. had studied                                      b. studied                                      c. hadn't been studying d. didn't study
12. I wish I\_\_\_\_\_ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.  
a. can lend                                      b. would lend                                      c. could lend                                      d. will lend
13. If someone\_\_\_\_\_ into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?".  
a. comes                                      b. came                                      c. would come                                      d. could come
14. "Are we lost?"  
"I think so. I wish we\_\_\_\_\_ a map with us today".  
a. were bringing                                      b. brought                                      c. had brought                                      d. would bring
15. "Here's my phone number"  
"Thanks. I'll give you a call if I\_\_\_\_\_ some help tomorrow".  
a. will need                                      b. need                                      c. would need                                      d. needed
16. If I weren't working for an accounting firm, I\_\_\_\_\_ in a bank.  
a. work                                      b. will work                                      c. have worked                                      d. would be working
17. This sailboat\_\_\_\_\_ go faster if there were more wind.  
a. wouldn't                                      b. shall                                      c. will                                      d. would
18. I won't lend you this money\_\_\_\_\_ you promise to pay it back.  
a. if                                      b. unless                                      c. or                                      d. or else
19. If Mr. Brown had come sooner, he could\_\_\_\_\_ eaten dinner with us.  
a. has                                      b. had                                      c. have                                      d. 've
20. \_\_\_\_\_me and I'll explain the homework to you.  
a. Call                                      b. If you call                                      c. Calling                                      d. To call

1d	2b	3c	4d	5a	6d	7d	8b	9d	10c
11c	12c	13a	14c	15b	16d	17d	18b	19c	20a

Name:	<b>Basis No 7</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>PASSIVE VOICE</b>	

## Exercise 1

1. The longest fish in the contest was eighteen inches long".  
"It\_\_\_\_\_ by Thelma Rivers".  
a. was catching                      b. caught                      c. was caught                      d. catch
2. "I heard you decided to take up tennis".  
"Yes, I have\_\_\_\_\_ every day".  
a. been played                      b. been playing                      c. playing                      d. play
3. "Are we about to have dinner?".

- "Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_ in the dinning room".  
 a. is serving                      b. serves                      c. is being served                      d. served
4. "Why is Stanley in jail?" "He \_\_\_\_\_ of robbery".  
 a. has been convicted    b. has been convicting  
 c. has convicted                      d. convicted
5. "Where are Jack and Jan?" "They \_\_\_\_\_ the boxes you asked for into the house".  
 a. have been bringing    b. bringing                      c. have been brought    d. to bring
6. "Where's the old chicken coop?"  
 "It \_\_\_\_\_ by a windstorm last year".  
 a. destroy                      b. is destroyed                      c. was destroyed                      d. destroyed
7. "We're still looking for Thomas".  
 "Hasn't he \_\_\_\_\_ yet?".  
 a. been found                      b. to find                      c. found                      d. being found
8. "Whatever happened t that fortune - teller?"  
 "I don't know. She \_\_\_\_\_ around her in a long time".  
 a. hasn't seen                      b. didn't see                      c. hasn't been seeing                      d. hasn't been seen
9. "Diana is a wonderful ballet dancer".  
 "She \_\_\_\_\_ since she was four".  
 a. has been dancing    b. has been danced    c. is dancing                      d. was danced
10. "What a beautiful dress you're wearing!"  
 "Thank you. It \_\_\_\_\_ especially for me by a French tailor".  
 a. is made                      b. has made                      c. made                      d. was made
11. "Those eggs of different colors are very artistic".  
 "Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ in Russia".  
 a. were painted                      b. were paint                      c. were painting                      d. painted
12. "Homer is in jail for smoking marijuana".  
 "He \_\_\_\_\_ that it was against the law".  
 a. is telling                      b. was told                      c. old                      d. tells
13. "The maintenance people didn't remove the chairs from the ballroom".  
 "Don't worry. They \_\_\_\_\_ them before the dance begins".  
 a. will have been moved                      b. will have moved  
 c. were moved                      d. moved
14. Gold \_\_\_\_\_ in California in the nineteenth century.  
 a. was discovered                      b. has been discovered  
 c. was discover                      d. they discovered
15. \_\_\_\_\_ that military spending is extremely high.  
 a. We are felt                      b. It feels                      c. It is felt                      d. We feel that it is
16. All planes \_\_\_\_\_ before departure.  
 a. will checked                      b. will has checked  
 c. will be checked                      d. will been checked
17. I wanted \_\_\_\_\_ by the head of the company, but it was impossible.  
 a. to see                      b. to be seen                      c. seeing                      d. being to see
18. Katherine \_\_\_\_\_ at Bob's house every night this week.  
 a. has been eaten                      b. has eating                      c. is being eating                      d. has been eating
19. "Where did you get these old dresses?".  
 "We \_\_\_\_\_ them in the old trunk".  
 a. were found                      b. finding                      c. found                      d. have been found

20. "What happened to the old mail carrier?"

"He\_\_\_\_\_ to a new neighborhood to work".

a. has sent

b. was send

c. was sent

d. sent

1c	2b	3c	4a	5a	6c	7a	8d	9a	10d
11a	12b	13b	14a	15c	16c	17b	18d	19c	20c

## Exercise 2

1. Some body cleans the room every day
  - a. The room every day is cleaned
  - b. The room is every day cleaned
  - c. The room is cleaned every day
  - d. The room is cleaned by somebody every day
2. They cancelled all flights because of fog.
  - a. All flights because of fog were cancelled.
  - b. All flights were cancelled because of fog.
  - c. All flights were because of fog cancelled
  - d. All flights were cancelled by them because of fog
3. People don't use this road very often.
  - a. This road is not used very often
  - b. Not very often this road is not used
  - c. This road very often is not used
  - d. This road not very often is used
4. Somebody accused me of stealing money
  - a. I was accused by somebody of stealing money.
  - b. I was accused of stealing money
  - c. I was accused of stealing money by somebody
  - d. I was accused stealing money.
5. How do people learn languages?
  - a. How are languages learned?
  - b. How are languages learned by people?
  - c. How languages are learned?
  - d. Languages are learned how?
6. People warned us not to go out alone.
  - a. We were warned not going out alone
  - b. We were warned not to go out alone by people.
  - c. We weren't warned to go out alone.
  - d. We were warned not to go out alone.
7. Somebody is using the computer at the moment.
  - a. The computer is being use at the moment.
  - b. The computer at the moment is being used.
  - c. The computer is being used by some body at the moment.
  - d. The computer is used at the moment.
8. I didn't realize that somebody was recording our conversation.
  - a. I didn't realize that our conversation was recorded.
  - b. I didn't realize that our conversation was being recorded
  - c. I didn't realize that our conversation was being recorded by someone.
  - d. Our conversation wasn't realized to be recorded.
9. We found that they had cancelled the game.
  - a. We found that the fame had been cancelled.
  - b. The game had been cancelled.
  - c. We found that the game had been cancelled by them.
  - d. The game were found to be cancelled.



10. They are building a new highway around the city.
  - a. A new highway is being built around the city.
  - b. A new highway is being built around the city by them
  - c. A new highway around the city is being built.
  - d. Around the city a new highway is being built.
11. They have built a new hospital near the airport.
  - a. A new hospital has been built near the airport by them.
  - b. A new hospital near the airport has been built.
  - c. A new hospital has been built near the airport.
  - d. Near the airport a new hospital has been.
12. People should send their complaints to the head office.
  - a. Complaints should be sent to the head office.
  - b. Complaints should be sent to the head office by people.
  - c. Their complaints should be sent to the head office by people.
  - d. Their complaints to the head office should be sent.
13. They had to postpone the meeting because of illness.
  - a. The meeting had to be postponed because of illness.
  - b. The meeting had to because of illness be postponed.
  - c. The meeting had to be postponed by them because of illness.
  - d. The meeting because of illness had to be postponed.
14. Somebody might have stolen our car.
  - a. somebody might have been stolen your car.
  - b. Your car might be stolen.
  - c. Your car might have been stolen by somebody
  - d. Your car might have been stolen.
15. An electrical fault could have caused the fire.
  - a. An electrical fault could have been caused by the fire.
  - b. An electrical fault could have caused the fire
  - c. The fire could have been caused by a electrical fault.
  - d. The fire could have caused an electrical fault.
16. They are going to hold next year's congress in San Francisco.
  - a. Congress is going to be held next year in San Francisco.
  - b. Congress in San Francisco is going to be held next year.
  - c. Next year's congress is going to be held by them held next year.
  - d. Next year's congress is going to be held in San Francisco.
17. They shouldn't have played the football match in such bad weather.
  - a. The football match shouldn't have been played in such bad weather.
  - b. The football match shouldn't have been played by them in such bad weather.
  - c. The football match shouldn't be played in such bad weather.
  - d. The football match shouldn't have played in such bad weather.
18. The bill includes service
 

a. Service is included by the bill	b. Service included in the bill
c. Service is included in the bill	d. Service is in the bill
19. They have changed the date of the meeting
  - a. The date of the meeting has been changed
  - b. The date of the meeting has been changed by them
  - c. The meeting has been changed the date

- d. The date of the meeting has changed
20. Brian told me that somebody had tracked him in the street.
- I was told by Brian that somebody had attacked him in the street.
  - I was told by Brian that he had been attacked in the street.
  - Brian told me to have been attacked in the street.
  - Brian told me that he had been attacked in the street.

1c	2b	3a	4b	5a	6d	7a	8b	9a	10a
11c	12a	13a	14d	15c	16d	17a	18c	19a	20d

### Exercise 3

- They will ask you a lot of questions at the interview.
  - You will be asked a lot of questions at the interview.
  - You will be asked a lot of questions at the interview by them.
  - A lot of questions will be asked you at the interview.
  - A lot of questions will be asked at the interview.
- Nobody told me that George was ill.
  - I was told that
  - I wasn't told that George was ill
  - George wasn't told to be ill
  - George was told not to be ill
- His colleagues gave him a present when he retired.
  - He was given a present when he retired.
  - A present was given by his colleagues when he retired.
  - He was given a present by his colleagues when he retired.
  - A present was given him when he retired.
- We will send you the results as soon as they are ready.
  - You will be sent the results as soon as they are ready.
  - You will be sent the results as soon as they are ready by us.
  - The results will be sent you by us as soon as they are ready.
  - The results will be sent you as soon as they are ready by us.
- I think they should have offered Tom the job.
  - I think Tom should have been offered the job by them.
  - I think Tom should have been offered the job.
  - I am thought they should have offered Tom the job.
  - I think the job should have been offered Tom
- They say that many people are homeless after the tsunami.
  - They say many people to have been homeless after the tsunami.
  - They say many people to be homeless after the tsunami.
  - Many people are said to have been homeless after the tsunami.
  - Many people are said to be homeless after the tsunami.
- They know that the Prime Minister is in favour of the new law.
  - The Prime Minister is known to have been in favour of the new law.
  - They know the Prime Minister to be in favour of the new law.
  - The Prime Minister is known to be in favour of the new law.
  - They know the Prime Minister to have been in favour of the new law.
- They expect that the government will lose the election.
  - The government is expected to have lost the election.
  - The government is expected to lose the election.

- c. They expect the government to lose the election.
- d. They expect the government have lost election.
9. They think that the prisoner escaped by climbing over the wall.
  - a. The prisoner is thought to escape by climbing over the wall.
  - b. The prisoner is thought escaped by climbing over the wall.
  - c. The prisoner is thought having escaped by climbing over the wall.
  - d. The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over the wall.
10. They believe that the thieves got in through the kitchen window.
  - a. The thieves are believed to have got in through the kitchen window.
  - b. The thieves are believed to get in through the kitchen window.
  - c. They believe the thieves got in through the kitchen window.
  - d. They believe the thieves have got in through the kitchen window.
11. They report that over 200,000 people were killed in the tsunami.
  - a. Over 200,000 people are reported to have been killed in the tsunami.
  - b. Over 200,000 people are reported to be killed in the tsunami.
  - c. Over 200,000 people are reported to have killed in the tsunami.
  - d. Over 200,000 people are reported to kill in the tsunami.
12. They say that three men were arrested after the explosion.
  - a. Three men are said to be arrested after the explosion.
  - b. Three men are said to have been arrested after the explosion.
  - c. Three men are said to have arrested after the explosion.
  - d. Three men are said to arrest after the explosion.
13. The boys carried the box into the room.
  - a. The box was carried by the boys into the room.
  - b. The box was carried into the room.
  - c. The box into the room was carried by the boys.
  - d. The box was carried into the room by the boys.
14. Tom bought that book yesterday.
  - a. That book was bought yesterday by Tom.
  - b. That book was bought by Tom yesterday.
  - c. That book yesterday was bought by Tom.
  - d. That book was bought yesterday.
15. The old man treated the little boy badly.
  - a. The little boy was treated by the old man badly.
  - b. The little boy was badly treated by the old man.
  - c. The little boy badly was treated by the old man.
  - d. The little boy was treated badly by the old man.
16. They didn't offer Ann the job.
 

a. The job wasn't offered Ann by them.	b. Ann wasn't offered them the job.
c. Ann wasn't offered the job by them.	d. Ann wasn't offered the job.
17. Scientists have not produced a miraculous drug which can cure SIDA a miraculous drug \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. has not been produced by scientists which can cure SIDA.
  - b. has not been produced by scientists who can cure SIDA.
  - c. which can cure SIDA has not been produced by scientists.
  - d. who can cure SIDA have not been produced by scientists.
18. The letter that I received yesterday is from my sister.
  - a. I was received that the letter is from my sister.

- b. The letter that was received yesterday is from my sister.  
 c. The letter yesterday that is from my sister is received by me.  
 d. I received yesterday that the letter is from my sister.
19. People say that he is the most experienced teacher of English.  
 a. He is said to be the most experienced teacher of English.  
 b. He is said the most experienced teacher of English.  
 c. He is to be said the most experienced teacher of English.  
 d. That he is the most experienced teacher of English is said by people.
20. He is teaching me speaking and listening  
 a. Me is being taught speaking and listening.  
 b. I speaking and listening are being taught.  
 c. I am being taught listening and speaking.  
 d. Speaking and listening is being taught me.

1a	2b	3c	4a	5b	6d	7c	8b	9d	10a
11a	12b	13d	14b	15b	16d	17c	18b	19a	20c

Name:	<b>Basis No 8</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>REPORTED SPEECH</b>	

### Exercise 1

- Charlie said, "I, thinking of going to live in Canada".  
 a. Charlie said that I was thinking of going to live in Canada.  
 b. Charlie said that I am thinking of going to live in Canada.  
 c. Charlie said that he was thinking of going to live in Canada.  
 d. Charlie said that he is thinking of going to live in Canada.
- Charlie said, "My father is in hospital".  
 a. Charlie said that my father is in hospital.  
 b. Charlie said that his father was in hospital.  
 c. Charlie said that his father is in hospital.  
 d. Charlie said that my father was in hospital.
- Charlie said, "Nora and Jim are getting married tomorrow".  
 a. He said that Nora and Jim are getting married tomorrow.  
 b. He said that Nora and Jim were getting married the next day.  
 c. He said that Nora and Jim were getting married tomorrow.  
 d. He said that Nora and Jim are getting married the next day.
- Charlie said, "I haven't seen Bill for a while".  
 a. He said that he hadn't seen Bill for a while.  
 b. He said that I haven't seen Bill for a while.  
 c. He said that he hasn't seen Bill for a while.  
 d. He said that I hadn't seen Bill for a while.
- Charlie said, "I've been playing tennis a lot recently".  
 a. Charlie said that I've been playing tennis recently.  
 b. Charlie said that he had been playing tennis recently.  
 c. Charlie said that he had been playing tennis recently.  
 d. Charlie said that I had been playing tennis recently.

6. Charlie said, "Margaret has had a baby".
  - a. Charlie said Margaret has had a baby.
  - b. Charlie said Margaret had had a baby.
  - c. Charlie said Margaret had a baby.
  - d. Charlie said Margaret has a baby.
7. Charlie said, "I don't know what Fred is doing".
  - a. He said that he doesn't know what Fred is doing.
  - b. He said that he didn't know what Fred is doing.
  - c. He said that he doesn't know what Fred was doing.
  - d. He said that he didn't know what Fred was doing.
8. Charlie said, "I hardly ever go out these days".
  - a. He said that he hardly ever went out these days.
  - b. He said that I hardly ever go out these days.
  - c. He said that I hardly ever went out these days.
  - d. He said that he hardly ever goes out these days.
9. Charlie said, "I work 14 hours a day".
  - a. He said that he works 14 hours a day.
  - b. He said that he worked 14 hours a day.
  - c. He said that I work 14 hours a day.
  - d. He said that I worked 14 hours a day.
10. Charlie said, "I'll tell Jim I saw you"
  - a. He said he'll tell Jim he saw me.
  - b. He said I would tell Jim I had seen you.
  - c. He said he would tell Jim he had seen me.
  - d. He said I would tell Jim he had seen me.
11. Charlie said, "You can come and stay with me if you are ever in London".
  - a. He said you could come and stay with him if you were ever in London.
  - b. He said I could come and stay with him if I were ever in London.
  - c. He said you can come and stay with him if you are ever in London.
  - d. He said I can come and stay with him if I am ever in London.
12. Charlie said, "Tom had an accident last week but he wasn't injured".
  - a. He said Tom had an accident last week but he wasn't injured.
  - b. He said Tom had had an accident last week but he wasn't injured.
  - c. He said Tom had had a accident last week but he hadn't bee injured.
  - d. He said Tom had an accident last week but he hadn't been injured.
13. Charlie said, "I saw jack at a party a few months ago and he seemed fine".
  - a. He said he had seen Jack at a party a few months ago and he had seemed fine
  - b. He said I saw Jack at a party a few months ago and he seemed fine
  - c. He said he had seen Jack at a party a few months ago and he seemed fine
  - d. He said he saw Jack at a party a few months ago and he had seemed fine
14. To said, "New York is bigger than London".
  - a. He said that New York was bigger than London.
  - b. He says that New York is bigger than London.
  - c. He says that New York was bigger than London.
  - d. He said that New York is bigger than London.
15. "Stay in bed for a few days", the doctor said to me.
  - a. The doctor told me stay in bed for a few a days.
  - b. The doctor told to me to stay in bed for a few days.
  - c. The doctor said me to stay in bed for a few days.
  - d. The doctor told me to stay in bed for a few days.
16. "Don't shout", I said to Jim.

- 17.

11b

1.

- 2.

- b. I told him to come not before 6 o'clock.  
 c. I told to him not to come before 6 o'clock.  
 d. I told him not to come before 6 o'clock.
6. "I can see you later", he said.  
 a. He said he could see me later                      b. He said I can see you later  
 c. He said I can see you later                      b. He said he can see me later
7. "I shall tell him exactly what I think", she said.  
 a. She said she should tell him exactly what she thought  
 b. She said she would tell him exactly what she thought  
 c. She said she shall tell him exactly what she thinks.  
 d. She said I would tell him exactly what I thought.
8. "Are you willing to travel?" she asked.  
 a. She asked me am I willing to travel?              b. She asked me if I am willing to travel  
 c. She asked me was I willing to travel?              b. She asked me if I was willing to travel
9. "You should see a specialist", he told me.  
 a. He told me I should see a specialist.              b. He told me you should see a specialist.  
 c. He told me I should have seen a specialist.      b. He told me to should see a specialist.
10. "I would like a appointment tomorrow", I said to my dentist.  
 a. I told my dentist that I would like an appointment the next day.  
 b. I told my dentist that I would like a appointment tomorrow.  
 c. I told my dentist that I would have liked an appointment the next day.  
 d. I told my dentist that I would have liked an appointment tomorrow.
11. "You ought to slow down a bit", the doctor told Jim.  
 a. The doctor told Jim ought to slow down a bit.  
 b. The doctor told Jim that ought to slow down a bit.  
 c. The doctor told Jim that he ought to slow down a bit.  
 d. The doctor told Jim that he slowed down a bit.
12. "I must have slept through the alarm", she said.  
 a. She said she must have slept through the alarm  
 b. She said I must have slept through the alarm  
 c. She said she left through the alarm  
 d. She said she had to have slept through the alarm
13. "I must have slept through the alarm", she said.  
 a. She said she must have slept through the alarm.  
 b. She said I must have slept through the alarm.  
 c. She said she slept through the alarm.  
 a. She said she had to have slept through the alarm.
14. "You needn't come in tomorrow", the boss said.  
 a. The boss said I needn't come in tomorrow.  
 b. The boss said you needn't come in the next day.  
 c. The boss said I didn't have to come in tomorrow.  
 d. The boss said I needn't come in the next day.
15. "If you pass your test, I'll buy you a car", he said.  
 a. He said that If I pass my test, he'll buy me a car.  
 b. He said that If you pass your test, he would buy you a car.  
 c. He said that If I pass my test, he would buy me a car.  
 d. He said that If I had pass my test, he would have bought me a car.

16. "If you passed you test, I would buy you a car", he said.
  - a. He said that if I passed my test, he would buy you a car.
  - b. He said that if you had passed your test, he would have bought you a car.
  - c. He said that if I had passed my test, he would have bought me a car.
  - d. He said that if you passed your test, he would buy you a car.
17. "If you'd passed your test, I'd have ought you a car", he said.
  - a. He said that I'd passed my test, he'd have bought me a car.
  - b. He said that if I passed my test, he would buy me a car.
  - c. He said that if you had passed your test, he would have bought you a car.
  - d. He said that if you had passed your test, he would buy you a car.
18. "What a silly boy you are!" she exclaimed
  - a. She told him what a silly boy you are.
  - b. She told him what a silly boy he is.
  - c. She told him what a silly boy he was.
  - d. She told him what a silly boy you were.
19. The police officer said to us, "Where are you going?"
  - a. The police officer asked us where we were going?
  - b. The police officer asked us where were we going?
  - c. The police officer asked us where are we going?
  - d. The police officer asked us where we are going?
20. Clair asked, "What time do the banks close?"
  - a. Claire wanted to know what time the banks close?
  - b. Claire wanted to know what time do the banks close?
  - c. Claire wanted to know what time did the banks close?
  - d. Claire wanted to know what time the banks closed.

1b	2a	3b	4a	5d	6a	7b	8d	9a	10a
11c	12a	13a	14d	15c	16d	17a	18c	19a	20d

### Exercise 3

1. "How long have you bee working at your present job?" she asked
  - a. She asked me how long I had been working at my present job.
  - b. She asked me how long had I been working at my present job.
  - c. She asked me how long I have been working at my present job.
  - d. She asked me how long have you been working at your present job.
2. "What do you do in your spare time?" she asked.
  - a. She wanted to know what I do in my spare time.
  - b. She wanted to know what I did in my spare time.
  - c. She wanted to know what did I do in my spare time.
  - d. She wanted to know what do I do in my spare time.
3. "Do you have a driver's license?" she asked
  - a. She asked me did you have a driver's license?
  - b. She asked me do you have a driver's license?
  - c. She asked me if I had a driver's license?
  - d. She asked me if I have a driver's license?
4. "Where did you go?".
  - a. She asked me where I had gone.
  - b. She asked me where did you go.
  - c. She asked me where did I go.
  - d. She asked me where you had gone.



5. "Can you use a computer?" she asked
  - a. She wanted to know whether I can use a computer.
  - b. She wanted to know whether I could use a computer.
  - c. She wanted to know could I use a computer.
  - d. She wanted to know can I use a computer.
6. "How are you?" he asked.
  - a. He asked me how are you.
  - b. He asked me how I am.
  - c. He asked me how was I
  - d. He asked me how I was.
7. "Where have you been?" he asked
  - a. He asked me where had I been.
  - b. He asked me where have you been.
  - c. He asked me where I had been.
  - d. He asked me where you had been.
8. "How long have you been back?" he said.
  - a. He asked me how long had I been back?
  - b. He asked me how long I had been back?
  - c. He asked me how long have you been back?
  - d. He asked me how long you had been back?
9. "What are you doing now?" he asked.
  - a. He asked me what I am doing now.
  - b. He asked me what you were doing now.
  - c. He asked me what was I doing now.
  - d. He asked me what I was doing now.
10. "Why did you come back?" he asked.
  - a. He asked me why I had come back.
  - b. He asked me why had I come back.
  - c. He asked me why did you come back.
  - b. He asked me why you had come back.
11. "Are you glad to be back?" he asked.
  - a. He asked me if I was glad to be back.
  - b. He asked me was I glad to be back?
  - c. He asked me if I am glad to be back.
  - b. He asked me are you glad to be back?
12. "Do you plan to stay for a while?" he asked
  - a. He asked me if I plan to stay for a while.
  - b. He asked me if I planned to stay for a while.
  - c. He asked me did I plan to stay for a while.
  - d. He asked me do you plan to stay for a while.
13. "Can you lend me some money?"
  - a. He asked me can you lend him some money?
  - b. He asked me could you lend him some money?
  - c. He asked me if I can lend him some money?
  - d. He asked me if I could lend him some money?
14. "Where can I buy a phone card in this city?" he asked.
  - a. He asked me where could he buy a phone card in that city?
  - b. He asked me where he could buy a phone card in that city?
  - c. He asked me where I could buy a phone card in that city?
  - d. He asked me where he can buy a phone card in that city?
15. She asked, "will you go to night?"
  - a. She asked me if I will go that night.
  - b. She asked me if I would go that night.
  - c. She asked me if will I go night.
  - b. She asked me would I go that night.
16. They said, "Hurrad! We have won the contest!".
  - a. They said "Hurrad" that they had won the contest.
  - b. They said they had won the contest.
  - c. They exclaimed with joy that they had won the contest.



- a. from doing      b. not to do      c. not do      d. not doing
12. You should remember\_\_\_\_\_ for me.  
a. post      b. posting      c. to be posting      d. to have posted
13. We object to\_\_\_\_\_ her like this.  
a. treat      b. being treated      c. treating      d. be treated
14. I can't help\_\_\_\_\_ anxious about the economic situation of our country.  
a. be      b. feeling      c. feel      d. to feel
15. The nurse denied\_\_\_\_\_ the injection.  
a. give      b. giving      c. gave      d. to give
16. Don't stay in this bush to avoid\_\_\_\_\_ by snakes.  
a. bitten      b. to be bitten      c. being bitten      d. biting
17. I am looking forward to\_\_\_\_\_ my classmates again.  
a. seeing      b. to be bitten      c. being bitten      d. see
18. It is necessary that you avoid\_\_\_\_\_ him during the working session.  
a. disturb      b. to disturb      c. disturbing      d. disturbs
19. Are you considering\_\_\_\_\_ with us?  
a. to go      b. going      c. to have gone      d. go
20. Your hair needs\_\_\_\_\_  
a. cut      b. cutted      c. cutting      d. be cut

1c	2d	3a	4b	5b	6c	7b	8c	9a	10d
11a	12b	13c	14b	15b	16c	17a	18c	19b	20c

## Exercise 2

1. Haven't you started\_\_\_\_\_ the answer?  
a. write      b. writing      c. how to write      d. them to write
2. These shoes need\_\_\_\_\_  
a. mending      b. mend      c. to mending      d. to mend
3. Please excuse\_\_\_\_\_  
a. for being late      b. me for being late      c. me be late      d. I am late
4. It's no good\_\_\_\_\_ me about your lost cat.  
a. to tell      b. tell      c. him tell      d. telling
5. My younger brother takes pleasures in\_\_\_\_\_ his little sister.  
a. tease      b. to tease      c. teases      d. teasing
6. I remember\_\_\_\_\_ you before, but I have forgotten your name.  
a. to meet      b. met      c. meet      d. meeting
7. Choose the 2 same sentences.  
a. She stops writing the letter      b. She stops to write the letter  
c. She ceases writing the letter      d. a and c are correct
8. I often dream of\_\_\_\_\_ on a trip to Japan.  
a. to go      b. going      c. go      d. to going
9. She was soon out of breath, but she continued\_\_\_\_\_  
a. run      b. ran      c. running      d. in running
10. The strap needs mending. It\_\_\_\_\_  
a. has mended      b. has to be mended      c. has been mended      d. has been mending
11. Workers began\_\_\_\_\_ a number of wooden boxes

- a. unload                      b. unloading                      c. unloaded                      d. to unloading
12. It occurred to him to open it. He thought. \_\_\_\_\_  
a. of opening                      b. to open                      c. to have opened                      d. opening
13. He answered these questions by \_\_\_\_\_ his head.  
a. to nod                      b. nodding                      c. nod                      d. to nodding
14. I couldn't deny \_\_\_\_\_ plausible excuses.  
a. him having made                      b. he has made                      c. that he has done                      d. his having made
15. I can't help \_\_\_\_\_ whether it should rain.  
a. wonder                      b. to wonder                      c. wondering                      d. for wondering
16. We appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ from you.  
a. hearing                      b. hear                      c. to hear                      d. heard
17. That young man will require \_\_\_\_\_ after.  
a. look                      b. looking                      c. to look                      d. looked
18. \_\_\_\_\_ to friends is nice but \_\_\_\_\_ is also enjoyable  
a. Talking /being alone                      b. To talk/ being alone  
c. Talk/ to be alone                      d. Talking/ be alone
19. Would you mind not \_\_\_\_\_ on the bus?  
a. in smoke                      b. to smoke                      c. smoke                      d. smoking
20. I'm opposed to \_\_\_\_\_ the money.  
a. borrow                      b. be borrowed                      c. borrowing                      d. be borrowing

1b	2a	4b	4d	5d	6d	7d	8a	9c	10b
11b	12a	13a	14d	15c	16a	17b	18a	19d	20c

Name:	<b>Basis No 10 INFINITIVE</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

### Exercise 1

1. My father usually helps me \_\_\_\_\_ English.  
a. to learn                      b. lean                      c. learning                      d. both a and b
2. He was heard \_\_\_\_\_ shout.  
a. to                      b. of                      c. by                      d. at
3. This student expected \_\_\_\_\_ the first winner of the Grand Prix.  
a. be                      b. being                      c. to be                      d. will be
4. I told her \_\_\_\_\_ about her wedding; everything will straighten out.  
a. don't worry                      b. not to worry                      c. no worry                      d. not worry
5. May I suggest you let \_\_\_\_\_  
a. Mary doing so                      b. Mary do so                      c. Mary does to                      d. Mary to do so
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ him when he called her.  
a. pretended not hear                      b. pretended she heard not  
c. pretended not to hear                      d. did not pretend hear
7. The doctor advised \_\_\_\_\_ late.  
a. me not staying up                      b. me not stay up                      c. me not to stay up                      d. I did not stay up
8. The school superintendent told me \_\_\_\_\_  
a. hurrying up                      b. to hurry up                      c. hurry up                      d. hurried up
9. " \_\_\_\_\_ us face the enemies", shouted the soldiers.

- a. Make                      b. Let                      c. Leave                      d. Keep
10. Mr. Brown told the schoolgirls\_\_\_\_\_ in class.  
a. don't ear                      b. not to eat                      c. eat not                      d. not eat
11. I have heard Dang Thai Son\_\_\_\_\_ the piano.  
a. played                      b. plays                      c. play                      d. to play
12. The young teachers wanted a Foreign Language Teaching workshop \_\_\_\_\_ in Ho Chi Minh City.  
a. to be holding                      b. should hold                      c. to be held                      d. to hold
13. \_\_\_\_\_able to take part in the international math contest two years from now, Son works very hard in his math lass.  
a. In order to be                      b. Being                      c. Been                      d. So that he be
14. Try\_\_\_\_\_ so many mistakes.  
a. not to make                      b. not make                      c. to make not                      d. make not
15. Let me\_\_\_\_\_ from you soon.  
a. to hear                      b. hear                      c. hearing                      d. heard
16. John is too stupid\_\_\_\_\_ understand this.  
a. to                      b. not to                      c. to not                      d. for
17. The wind is\_\_\_\_\_ to blow the roof off.  
a. strong enough                      b. too strong                      c. quiet strong                      d. very strong
18. My father is \_\_\_\_\_ to stay up late.  
a. too tired                      b. enough tired                      c. tired enough                      d. so tired
19. John wanted me\_\_\_\_\_ him.  
a. to be helping                      b. help                      c. to help                      d. I help
20. I want\_\_\_\_\_ early tomorrow morning.  
a. to leave                      b. leaving                      c. me leave                      d. me leaving

1d	2a	3c	4b	5c	6c	7c	8b	9b	10b
11c	12c	13a	14b	15b	16a	17a	18a	19c	20a

## Exercise 2

1. I hope\_\_\_\_\_  
a. to see you there                      b. seeing you there                      c. you to see there                      d. see you there
2. I taught\_\_\_\_\_  
a. how mending a shirt                      b. him how to mend a shirt  
c. how mend a shirt                      d. him how mend a shirt
3. I told\_\_\_\_\_  
a. Nam to come                      b. to come Nam                      c. to Nam come                      d. Nam come
4. My father has decided\_\_\_\_\_ a new house.  
a. find                      b. to find                      c. finding                      d. him find
5. Mother warned\_\_\_\_\_ the electric plug  
a. here not to touch                      b. her touching not                      c. her not touch                      d. not touch
6. Don't tell Tan because I don't want\_\_\_\_\_  
a. him to know                      b. know                      c. him know                      d. knowing
7. She explained\_\_\_\_\_  
a. how to make it                      b. me how to make it                      c. me to make it                      d. me make it
8. Miss Brown told Mary\_\_\_\_\_ down.  
a. sit                      b. to sit                      c. sitting                      d. sat
9. She told Mary\_\_\_\_\_ up hope.

- a. not give                      b. do not give                      c. not to give                      d. to give not
10. Michael Faraday wrote a letter to Sir Humphry Davy\_\_\_\_\_ for work.  
a. asked                      b. to ask                      c. so to ask                      d. in order to asking
11. Do you know\_\_\_\_\_ to play that game now?  
a. way                      b. what                      c. if                      d. how
12. She is very glad\_\_\_\_\_ see you again.  
a. in                      b. with                      c. to                      d. for
13. He noticed two thieves\_\_\_\_\_ out of a shop.  
a. to come                      b. are coming                      c. in coming                      d. come
14. When will he be allowed to go home? When will they\_\_\_\_\_?  
a. let him go                      b. let to go                      c. leave him to go                      d. leave him
15. The guide encouraged the tourists\_\_\_\_\_ the Prado Museum Madrid  
a. visit                      b. to visit                      c. visiting                      d. to visiting
16. Now that we finished painting the house, there's nothing left\_\_\_\_\_  
a. done                      b. did                      c. to do                      d. for doing
17. The superintendent promised to tear down and\_\_\_\_\_ the fire damaged school building.  
a. rebuild                      b. to rebuild                      c. rebuilding                      d. to rebuilding
18. The mechanic needs\_\_\_\_\_ a new muffler on your car.  
a. to put                      b. putting                      c. to be put                      d. to putting
19. Our house needs\_\_\_\_\_  
a. to paint                      b. to be painting                      c. to be paint                      d. painting
20. Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ by the doctor?  
a. to examine                      b. to be examined                      c. being examined                      d. being to examine

1a	2b	3a	4b	5a	6a	7a	8b	9c	10b
11d	12c	13d	14a	15b	16c	17a	18a	19d	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 11</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>GERUND &amp; INFINITIVE</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. I enjoy\_\_\_\_\_ alone.  
a. be                      b. being                      c. to be                      d. to have been
2. Would you like\_\_\_\_\_ to the party?  
a. to come                      b. come                      c. coming                      d. to have come
3. Do you mind\_\_\_\_\_ such a long way to work everyday?  
a. to travel                      b. travel                      c. to have traveled                      d. traveling
4. I don't like that house. I would hate\_\_\_\_\_ there.  
a. live                      b. living                      c. to lie                      d. to have lived
5. I don't like that house. I would hate\_\_\_\_\_ there.  
a. live                      b. living                      c. to live                      d. to have lived
6. Sometimes I'd like\_\_\_\_\_ to play the piano.  
a. to learn                      b. learn                      c. learning                      d. to have learned
7. Please remember\_\_\_\_\_ this letter.  
a. to post                      b. post                      c. posting                      d. to have posted
8. We tried\_\_\_\_\_ the fire out but we were unsuccessful. We had to call the fire-brigade.

- a. putting                      b. put                      c. to put                      d. to have put
9. When you see John, remember\_\_\_\_\_ it by the window and now it has gone.  
a. to have given              b. giving                      c. give                      d. to give
10. Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember\_\_\_\_\_ it by the window and now it has gone.  
a. leave                      b. leaving                      c. to leave                      d. to have left
11. Jane needed some money. She tried\_\_\_\_\_ Harry but he couldn't help her.  
a. to have asked              b. ask                      c. to ask                      d. asking
12. I think they are now accustomed to \_\_\_\_\_ 12 hours a day.  
a. work                      b. to work                      c. worked                      d. working
13. He tried\_\_\_\_\_ the shelf but he wasn't tall enough.  
a. reach                      b. reaching                      c. to reach                      d. to have reached
14. Alice didn't expect\_\_\_\_\_ to Bill's party  
a. asking                      b. being asked                      c. to ask                      d. to be asked
15. I finally finished\_\_\_\_\_ at 7:00 pm and served dinner.  
a. cooking                      b. being cooked                      c. to cook                      d. to be cooked
16. Sam always remembers\_\_\_\_\_ in the garage so that the driveway is free for other cars.  
a. parking                      b. being parked                      c. to park                      d. to be parked
17. The nurse suggested\_\_\_\_\_ two aspirins.  
a. taking                      b. being taken                      c. to take                      d. to be taken
18. Would you mind not\_\_\_\_\_ the radio until I've finished with this phone call?  
a. turning on                      b. being turned on                      c. to turn on                      d. to be turned on
19. They were fortunate\_\_\_\_\_ from the fire before the building collapsed.  
a. rescuing                      b. to have rescued                      c. to rescue                      d. to have been rescued
20. The house family avoided\_\_\_\_\_ by coming out only when the house was empty and the two cats were outside.  
a. catching                      b. being caught                      c. to have been caught                      d. to be caught

1c	2a	3d	4c	5b	6a	7a	8c	9d	10b
11d	12d	13d	14a	15c	16a	17a	18d	19c	20d

## Exercise 2

1. It's very kind of you\_\_\_\_\_ so.  
a. say                      b. to say                      c. saying                      d. to be saying
2. Please show me how\_\_\_\_\_ this.  
a. do                      b. to do                      c. doing                      d. to have done
3. One is never too old\_\_\_\_\_  
a. learning                      b. learn                      c. to have learned                      d. to learn
4. You are old enough\_\_\_\_\_ out alone.  
a. going                      b. go                      c. to go                      d. to have gone
5. I'm very glad\_\_\_\_\_ you.  
a. to meet                      b. meet                      c. meeting                      d. to be meeting
6. It's nice\_\_\_\_\_ you.  
a. to know                      b. know                      c. knowing                      d. to be knowing
7. You have no right\_\_\_\_\_ my daughter.  
a. see                      b. to see                      c. seeing                      d. to have seen
8. Please tell me what\_\_\_\_\_

- a. doing                      b. do                      c. to do                      d. to have done
9. I forbid you \_\_\_\_\_ my letter.  
a. to read                      b. read                      c. to have read                      d. reading
10. We stopped \_\_\_\_\_ hello to her.  
a. say                      b. saying                      b. to have said                      d. to say
11. We came \_\_\_\_\_ help her.  
a. help                      b. to help                      c. to have helped                      d. helping
12. I'll invite her \_\_\_\_\_ my daughter.  
a. teaching                      b. teach                      c. to teach                      d. to have taught
13. I don't feel like \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema now.  
a. go                      b. going                      c. to go                      d. to have gone
14. It's no good \_\_\_\_\_ video games.  
a. play                      b. to have played                      c. to play                      d. playing
15. It's no use \_\_\_\_\_ with him.  
a. working                      b. work                      c. to work                      d. to have worked
16. The idea of \_\_\_\_\_ abroad appeals to me.  
a. working                      b. work                      c. to work                      d. being working
17. The Rogers are happy about \_\_\_\_\_ a baby.  
a. have                      b. having                      c. to have                      d. to be having
18. Camping is hard if you're not used to \_\_\_\_\_ on the ground.  
a. be slept                      b. to be sleeping                      c. sleeping                      d. sleeping
19. Mrs. Kerry didn't want \_\_\_\_\_ on  
a. to be operated                      b. being operated                      c. to operate                      d. to be operating
20. Windows are used to let in light and \_\_\_\_\_ out cold.  
a. to keep                      b. keep                      c. keeping                      d. for keeping

1b	2b	3d	4c	5a	6a	7b	8c	9a	10d
11b	12c	13b	14d	15a	16a	17b	18d	19a	20b

### Exercise 3

1. It isn't worth while \_\_\_\_\_ her.  
a. marry                      b. to marry                      c. marrying                      d. to have married
2. She did nothing but \_\_\_\_\_  
a. cry                      b. to cry                      c. to have cried                      d. crying
3. He can't live without \_\_\_\_\_ here.  
a. being loved                      b. to love                      c. love                      d. loving
4. People are prevented from \_\_\_\_\_ to the polluted area.  
a. go                      b. going                      c. to go                      d. to have gone
5. Tourists are not allowed \_\_\_\_\_ in the Temple.  
a. to talk                      b. talk                      c. talking                      d. being talked
6. The teacher doesn't allow \_\_\_\_\_ dictionaries in the final examination.  
a. being used                      b. use                      c. using                      d. to use
7. Many countries have considered \_\_\_\_\_ the victims of the tsunami.  
a. to have helped                      b. to help                      c. help                      d. helping
8. The child admitted \_\_\_\_\_ a lie.  
a. tell                      b. telling                      c. to tell                      d. to be telling
9. The president agreed \_\_\_\_\_ the Agreement.



- a. to sign                      b. sign                      c. signing                      d. to have signed
10. The captain chose\_\_\_\_\_ with his ship.  
a. die                      b. to die                      c. to have died                      d. dying
11. Vietnam failed\_\_\_\_\_ Tiger Cup 2004!  
a. winning                      b. win                      c. to win                      d. to have won
12. The child promised\_\_\_\_\_ his parents.  
a. being obeyed                      b. obeying                      c. obey                      d. to obey
13. Lee was upset by\_\_\_\_\_ him the truth.  
a. our not having told                      b. us not tell                      c. we didn't tell                      d. not to tell
14. Wee considered\_\_\_\_\_ after work.  
a. to go shop                      b. going shopping                      c. going to shop                      d. to go to shop
15. Jack offered\_\_\_\_\_ care of my garden while I was out of town.  
a. take                      b. taking                      c. to have taken                      c. to take
16. Could you please come over? I need you \_\_\_\_\_ the refrigerator.  
a. help me moving                      b. helping me to move  
c. to help me move                      d. help me to move
17. I'll never forget\_\_\_\_\_ that race. What a thrill!  
a. to win                      b. win                      c. being won                      d. winning
18. No one has better qualifications. Carol is certain\_\_\_\_\_ for the job.  
a. to choose                      b. having chosen                      c. to be chosen                      d. being chosen
19. I was enjoying my book, but I topper\_\_\_\_\_ a program on TV.  
a. reading to watch                      b. to read to watch  
c. to read for watching                      d. reading for to watch
20. Who is the woman talking to Mr. Quinn? I don't recall\_\_\_\_\_ her around the office before.  
a. to have seen                      b. seeing                      c. to see                      d. being seen

1c	2a	3d	4b	5a	6c	7d	8b	9a	10b
11c	12d	13a	14b	15d	16c	17d	18c	19a	20b

#### Exercise 4

1. He tried to avoid\_\_\_\_\_ my question.  
a. answer                      b. answering                      c. to answer                      d. to have answered
2. Paula has given up \_\_\_\_\_ to lose weight.  
a. try                      b. trying                      c. to try                      d. to have tried
3. We can't go on\_\_\_\_\_ like this.  
a. living                      b. live                      c. to live                      d. to be living
4. Don't keep\_\_\_\_\_ me while I'm talking.  
a. interrupt                      b. to interrupt                      c. interrupting                      d. to have interrupted
5. I can't imagine Bill \_\_\_\_\_ a motorbike.  
a. ride                      b. riding                      c. to ride                      d. to be riding
6. Sorry to keep you\_\_\_\_\_ so long.  
a. waiting                      b. wait                      c. to wait                      d. to have waited
7. She now regrets\_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. say                      b. having said                      c. to say                      d. to have said
8. We decided\_\_\_\_\_ at home.  
a. to stay                      b. stay                      c. staying                      d. having stayed
9. Frank tends\_\_\_\_\_ too much.

- a. to have drunk      b. drinking      c. drink      d. to drink
10. He doesn't want\_\_\_\_\_
- a. to know      b. know      c. knowing      d. to be knowing
11. I don't advise anybody\_\_\_\_\_ in that hotel.
- a. stay      b. to stay      c. staying      d. to have stayed
12. The mother made her child\_\_\_\_\_ the word
- a. repeat      b. to repeat      c. repeating      d. to be repeating
13. My parents don't let me\_\_\_\_\_ out alone.
- a. go      b. to go      c. going      d. to be going
14. I'm afraid I have some homework\_\_\_\_\_ today.
- a. do      b. to do      c. going      d. done
15. Have the movers\_\_\_\_\_ the bedroom furniture first.
- a. brought in      b. to bring in      c. bring in      d. bringing in
16. Do you know what\_\_\_\_\_ so many people evacuate their homes?
- a. forced      b. made      c. caused      d. convinced
17. Where are the children? "I saw\_\_\_\_\_ in the yard".
- a. them to play      b. them playing      c. they playing      d. to them playing
18. You're been taking a lot of nice photographs.
- a. becoming      b. about become      c. to become      d. about becoming
19. Jane's summer vacation in England led to\_\_\_\_\_ an English man.
- a. her marry      b. her to marry      c. her being married      d. her marrying
20. We would like\_\_\_\_\_ to the president's reception, but we weren't
- a. having invited      b. having been invited
- c. to have invited      d. to have been invited

1b	2b	3a	4c	5b	6a	7b	8a	9d	10a
11b	12a	13a	14b	15c	16b	17b	18a	19d	20d

### Exercise 5

1. I can't go because I haven't got anything\_\_\_\_\_
- a. wear      b. to wear      c. wearing      d. worn
2. I have nothing\_\_\_\_\_ you to day.
- a. tell      b. to tell      c. telling      d. told
3. Would you like something\_\_\_\_\_?
- a. drink      b. to drink      c. drinking      d. drunk
4. Is there any place\_\_\_\_\_ tonight?
- a. stayed      b. staying      c. to stay      d. stay
5. Have you got any books\_\_\_\_\_?
- a. sell      b. selling      c. sold      d. to sell
6. I often avoid\_\_\_\_\_ to parties.
- a. go      b. to go      c. gone      d. going
7. They often suggest their\_\_\_\_\_ out with some friends.
- a. going      b. gone      c. go      d. to go
8. Please pardon my\_\_\_\_\_ you.
- a. disturb      b. disturbing      c. to disturb      d. disturbed
9. I cannot remember\_\_\_\_\_ him last week.
- a. meet      b. meeting      c. to meet      d. met

10. Susan is interested in \_\_\_\_\_ a bus.  
a. drive                      b. driving                      c. to drive                      d. driven
11. What about \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk?  
a. going                      b. gone                      c. go                      d. to go
12. Have you planned on \_\_\_\_\_ to Nha Trang this summer?  
a. go                      b. to go                      c. going                      d. gone
13. I suggest \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema for a change.  
a. go                      b. to go                      c. went                      d. going
14. Do you consider \_\_\_\_\_ our teacher on Friday?  
a. inviting                      b. invited                      c. invited                      d. to invite
15. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ me a hand?  
a. to give                      b. giving                      c. give                      d. given
16. The baby continued \_\_\_\_\_ even after she was picked up.  
a. being crying                      b. having cried                      c. to cry                      d. having been crying
17. Arthur pretended not \_\_\_\_\_ hurt when his younger sister bit him.  
a. having                      b. be                      c. to have                      d. to have been
18. We were shocked to hear the news of your \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. having fired                      b. having been fired                      c. to be fired                      d. to have been fired
19. Do you have an excuse \_\_\_\_\_ late to class two days in a row?  
a. for to be                      b. for being                      c. to be                      d. being
20. Jack made me \_\_\_\_\_ him next week.  
a. to promise to call                      b. to promise calling                      c. promise to call                      d. promise calling

1b	2b	3b	4c	5d	6d	7a	8c	9b	10b
11a	12c	13d	14a	15b	16c	17d	18b	19b	20c

### Exercise 6

1. I can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ her cry.  
a. to have seen                      b. to see                      c. see                      d. seeing
2. Suddenly everybody stopped \_\_\_\_\_ There was silence.  
a. talking                      b. to talk                      c. talk                      d. being talked
3. I'll go with you when I've finished \_\_\_\_\_ my homework.  
a. to have done                      b. do                      c. doing                      d. to do
4. \_\_\_\_\_ natural resources is of great importance.  
a. Preserve                      b. Preserving                      c. To have preserved                      d. Preserved
5. We avoid \_\_\_\_\_ out environment.  
a. polluting                      b. to pollute                      c. pollute                      d. polluted
6. I think they are now accustomed to \_\_\_\_\_ 12 hours a day.  
a. work                      b. to work                      c. worked                      d. working
7. "Why did Mrs. Walker call?" "She wants \_\_\_\_\_ her load some boxes into her car"..  
a. that we help                      b. us help                      c. us helping                      d. us to help
8. "How did the prisoner escape?" "By climbing a fence and \_\_\_\_\_ someone's car".  
a. steal                      b. to steal                      c. from stealing                      d. stealing
9. "What happened to Julie?" "We saw \_\_\_\_\_ by a bicyclist".  
a. her hit                      b. hit her                      c. her hitting                      d. being hitting
10. "What is this letter about?" "It's in regard \_\_\_\_\_ at a conference next week".  
a. to you speak                      b. to our speaking                      c. of our speaking                      d. to you speaking

11. "Why are you getting new glasses?" "Because it's difficult\_\_\_\_\_ the small print in the newspaper".  
a. to read for me      b. my reading      c. I read      d. for me to read
12. "This cabinet is beautiful. Did you make it yourself?" "No, I had\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. it built      b. built it      c. to built it      d. it build
13. "Don't take a taxi. We insist\_\_\_\_\_ in our car."  
a. you to come      b. on your coming      c. on you coming      d. for you to come
14. "You've been redecorating your house", "Yes, I'm thinking\_\_\_\_\_ this room white".  
a. to paint      b. to painting      c. of paint      d. about painting
15. "What's wrong with the teacher?" "\_\_\_\_\_to class late so much has made him mad".  
a. John comes      b. John coming      c. John's coming      d. John to come
16. "I can't open this jar of mayonnaise" "\_\_\_\_\_ Lee to help you".  
a. Have      b. Let      c. Ask      d. Make
17. "Did you paint our house yourself?" "No, I had some friends\_\_\_\_\_ me"  
a. help      b. helped      b. to help      d. to help to
18. Photocopiers are used\_\_\_\_\_ of a written text.  
a. to make copies      b. to making copies      c. make copies      d. making copies
19. "Do you like being married?" "Yes, but I'm not use\_\_\_\_\_ every night".  
a. to cook      b. to cooking      c. cooking      d. to have cooked
20. "It's warmer in her now". "Yes, I had Karen \_\_\_\_\_ then window.".  
a. closed      b. closing      c. to close      d. close

1d	2a	3c	4b	5a	6d	7d	8d	9a	10b
11d	12a	13b	14d	15c	16c	17a	18a	19b	20d

Name:	<b>Basis No 12</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>PARTICIPLE PHRASES</b>	

1. \_\_\_\_\_their work, they went home.  
a. Finishing      b. Having finished      c. Had finished      d. Finished
2. The girl\_\_\_\_\_ behind you is naughty.  
a. stands      b. stood      c. is standing      d. standing
3. \_\_\_\_\_ their farm work, the farmers returned home.  
a. Finishing      b. Finish      c. Having finished      d. Being finished
4. \_\_\_\_\_by the visitor, the clavichord could not be used.  
a. Broken      b. Break      c. Breaking      d. Broke
5. After\_\_\_\_\_ dinner, I watches television.  
a. eat      b. eating      c. eaten      d. ate
6. When\_\_\_\_\_ in international trade, letters of credit are convenient.  
a. used      b. are used      c. using      d. they used
7. She swam to the shore\_\_\_\_\_ the night in the water.  
a. having pent      b. having spending      c. when spending      d. had spent
8. I believe here is somebody\_\_\_\_\_ on the door.  
a. to knock      b. knock      c. knocked      d. knocking
9. The lady\_\_\_\_\_ in blue is her aunt.  
a. dressed      b. dressing      c. is dressing      d. in dress

10. \_\_\_\_\_ from what you say, you are innocent.  
a. To judge                      b. Judging                      c. Judge                      d. To be judged
11. \_\_\_\_\_ you to the job, he felt calm  
a. Appointed                      b. Appoint                      c. Having appointed                      d. To appoint
12. \_\_\_\_\_ so much, the doll is still on the shelf.  
a. Cost                      b. Costs                      c. To cost                      d. Costing
13. \_\_\_\_\_ at by everyone, he was disappointed.  
a. laughed                      b. Laugh                      c. Laughing                      d. In laugh
14. \_\_\_\_\_ anxious to please us, they told us all we wanted to know.  
a. Be                      b. To be                      c. Being                      d. In being
15. Weather\_\_\_\_\_, we will start tomorrow.  
a. permits                      b. will permit                      c. is permitting                      d. permitting
16. Dinner\_\_\_\_\_ over, they returned home.  
a. being                      b. be                      c. is                      d. was
17. Since\_\_\_\_\_ his new business, Bob has been working 16 hours a day.  
a. open                      b. opening                      c. opened                      d. of opening
18. After \_\_\_\_\_the fight, the police arrested two men and a woman.  
a. stopping                      b. stop                      c. to stop                      d. stopped
19. \_\_\_\_\_ one hand on the steering wheel, Ann opened a can of soda pop with her free hand.  
a. To keep                      b. Keep                      c. In keeping                      d. Keeping
20. When \_\_\_\_\_ to explain his mistake, the new employee cleared his throat nervously.  
a. asking                      b. asked                      c. to be asked                      d. to be asking

1b	2d	3c	4a	5b	6a	7a	8d	9a	10b
11c	12d	13a	14c	15d	16a	17b	18a	19d	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 13</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>ADVERB CLAUSES</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. Last Sunday is was\_\_\_\_\_ wet \_\_\_\_\_ we couldn't go to the movies.  
a. so - that                      b. as - as                      c. less - than                      d. more - than
2. I did it\_\_\_\_\_ they asked me to.  
a. because                      b. because of                      c. the reason                      d. since
3. The corresponding sentence "There are so many things for me to do that..." is\_\_\_\_\_  
a. have so many things to do that                      b. nobody has so many....  
c. so many things are on me                      d. I do many things.
4. He was\_\_\_\_\_ tired that he slept all day.  
a. such                      b. too                      c. so                      d. very
5. The by was happy\_\_\_\_\_ he had done a good job.  
a. because                      b. as                      c. unless                      d. because of
6. Although he tried hard, \_\_\_\_\_  
a. but he failed                      b. yet he failed                      c. however he failed                      d. he failed
7. It was\_\_\_\_\_ that we had gone for a walk.  
a. such a beautiful weather                      b. such a ice weather  
c. so nice a weather                      d. so beautiful a night

8. Last year I earned \_\_\_\_\_ my sister, who has a better position.  
a. twice as much as    b. twice more than    c. twice as many as    d. twice as more as
9. \_\_\_\_\_ the room, the man was no longer there.  
a. Entering    b. When we entered    c. On entering    d. Having entered
10. It looks as if the game \_\_\_\_\_ unless the rain stops.  
a. will cancel    b. would be cancelled    c. will be cancelled    d. would cancel
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Richards was entering the dining-room, there was a knock on the front door.  
a. At the very moment    b. So long as    c. Only when    d. During the time
12. When did you eat? As soon as he came, we \_\_\_\_\_ our dinner.  
a. must have eaten    b. ate    c. were eating    d. had eaten
13. How can we measure the price and things? However much \_\_\_\_\_ it will be worth it.  
a. it cost    b. it costs    c. does it cost    d. costs it
14. "The new mathematics teachers seems very pleasant".  
a. a such nice    b. a so nice    c. such nice    d. such a nice
15. "I find the local newspaper to be \_\_\_\_\_ uninformative".  
"Yes, there is hardly any international news".  
a. so    b. such    c. so much    d. such much
16. "Here, I brought you some flowers from my garden".  
"Thank you. They're \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful colors".  
a. so    b. as    c. such    d. too
17. "Do you know why Erica failed the test?"  
"I don't know. She spent \_\_\_\_\_ time studying".  
a. so    b. such much    c. so much    d. much
18. "Wendy is really tall for her age".  
"She is so tall \_\_\_\_\_ her friends make fun of her".  
a. so    b. as    c. that    d. much
19. Some people are tall, \_\_\_\_\_ others are short.  
a. whereas    b. when    c. as    d. so
20. In some nations coffee is the favourite beverage, \_\_\_\_\_ in others it is tea.  
a. when    b. where    c. while    d. which

1a	2a	3a	4c	5a	6d	7d	8a	9b	10c
11a	12b	13b	14d	15a	16c	17c	18c	19a	20c

## Exercise 2

1. After Jessica \_\_\_\_\_ her agree, she intends to work in her father's company.  
a. will finish    b. will have finished    c. finishes    d. is finishing
2. By the time I go to bed tonight, I \_\_\_\_\_ my work for the day.  
a. will finish    b. have finished    c. will have finished    d. finish
3. When my parents \_\_\_\_\_ for a visit tomorrow, they will see our new baby of the first time.  
a. will arrive    b. arrived    c. will have arrived    d. arrived
4. Fatemah looked down to discover a snake at her feet. When she saw it, she \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. was screaming    b. had screamed    c. screamed    d. screams
5. By the time Alfonso finally graduated from high school, he \_\_\_\_\_ seven different schools because his parents moved frequently.  
a. attended    b. was attending    c. had attended    d. had been attending
6. Until you learn to relax more, you \_\_\_\_\_ your ability to speak English.

- a. haven't improved    b. aren't improving    c. don't improve    d. won't improve
7. I borrowed four books on gardening the last time I \_\_\_\_\_ to the library.  
a. go                      b. went                      c. had gone                      d. have gone
8. Before I stated the car, all of the passengers \_\_\_\_\_ their seat belts.  
a. will buckle                      b. had buckled                      c. buckle                      d. have buckled
9. It seems that whenever I travel abroad I \_\_\_\_\_ to take something need.  
a. for got                      b. am forgetting                      c. forget                      d. had forgotten
10. When I see the doctor this afternoon, I \_\_\_\_\_ him to look at my throat.  
a. will ask                      b. asked                      c. will have asked                      d. ask
11. After ancient Greek athletes won a race in the Olympics, they \_\_\_\_\_ a simple crown of olive leaves.  
a. received                      b. had received                      c. were receiving                      d. have received
12. After the race \_\_\_\_\_, the celebration began.  
a. had been won                      b. is won                      c. will be won                      d. has been won
13. I'll return Bod's pen to him next time I \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
a. see                      b. will see                      c. will have seen                      d. have seen
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ all of the questions correctly since I began this grammar exercise on verb tenses.  
a. am answering                      b. answer                      c. have answered                      d. answered
15. A small stone struck the windshield while we \_\_\_\_\_ down the gravel road.  
a. drive                      b. were driving                      c. had driven                      d. had been driving
16. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she \_\_\_\_\_ the fire department.  
a. was telephoning                      b. telephoned                      c. had telephoned                      d. telephones.
17. Before Jennifer won the lottery, she \_\_\_\_\_ any kind of contest.  
a. hasn't entered                      b. didn't enter                      c. wasn't entering                      d. hadn't entered
18. Every time Prakash sees a movie made in India, he \_\_\_\_\_ homesick.  
a. will have felt                      b. felt                      c. feels                      d. is feeling
19. Since I left Venezuela six years ago, I \_\_\_\_\_ to visit friends and family several times.  
a. return                      b. will have returned                      c. am returning                      d. have returned
20. While he was washing his new car, Mr. de Rosa \_\_\_\_\_ a small dent in the rear fender  
a. has discovered                      b. was discovering                      c. is discovering                      d. discovered

1c	2c	3d	4c	5c	6d	7b	8b	9c	10a
11a	12a	13a	14c	15b	16c	17d	18c	19d	20d

### Exercise 3

1. "What did you do on Sunday?"  
"It was \_\_\_\_\_ day that I went to the lake".  
a. such nice                      b. such a nice                      c. so nice                      d. very nice
2. "Did you hear the phone ring last night?"  
"I didn't here anything, I was \_\_\_\_\_ that I didn't wake up".  
a. very tired                      b. such tired                      c. so tired                      d. enough tired
3. "Why wasn't Mr. Fitzgerald offered a better room in the hotel?"  
"I don't know. It's surprising how \_\_\_\_\_ important person is treatd".  
a. so                      b. such                      c. a such                      d. such an
4. "How many your trip to Panama?"  
"Wonderful, except that we spent \_\_\_\_\_ money".  
a. so much                      b. such much                      c. many                      d. so many
5. "What is your opinion of the Smiths?"

- "They are\_\_\_\_\_ people".  
a. such an interesting b. so interesting a c. so interesting d. such interesting
6. "Did you like the band last night?".  
"Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ I bought their record".  
a. such much b. so much that c. very much that d. too much that
7. "That's a beautiful dress jean has on".  
"She always wears\_\_\_\_\_ clothes".  
a. such a lovely b. so lovely c. such lovely d. so much lovely
8. "Paul is a very competent salesperson".  
"He's\_\_\_\_\_ good that I am going to give him a raise and a promotion.  
a. definite b. definitely c. so d. so much
9. "I enjoy this particular radio station".  
"So do I. It always has\_\_\_\_\_ music".  
a. so good b. such a good c. such good d. a so good
10. "I hear that Mrs. Saunders has a lot of money".  
"She's\_\_\_\_\_ rich that she takes a helicopter to work".  
a. such b. too c. very d. so
11. "These new trains are fantastic!".  
"They move\_\_\_\_\_ ".  
a. so quick b. such quickly c. so quickly d. so much quick
12. "Where were you yesterday?"  
"It was\_\_\_\_\_ hot day that I went to an air-conditioned movie".  
a. such b. so c. such a d. a very
13. "You made a lot of long distance calls last month".  
"And now I'm faced\_\_\_\_\_ a huge bill".  
a. to b. with c. toward d. at
14. "What kind of job is Adrienne looking for?".  
"She's interested\_\_\_\_\_ a career in TV".  
a. in b. on c. to d. for
15. "The dance was fun".  
"But there were \_\_\_\_\_ there".  
a. so many peoples b. such much people c. so a lot of people d. so many people
16. "Main Market is a nice place"  
"They have\_\_\_\_\_ we recommend it to all our fiends".  
a. such good food that b. such a good food that  
c. so good food that d. such as good food as
17. "How much does a gold ring cost"?  
"It depends\_\_\_\_\_ the quality of the gold".  
a. to b. on b. of d. about
18. "Who is in class today?"  
"Everyone\_\_\_\_\_ Sam, who is sick".  
a. except b. without c. except from d. not
19. "I'm building a table".  
"How far have you gotten\_\_\_\_\_ it?".  
a. to b. for c. along d. on
20. "When did you get married?"  
"\_\_\_\_\_1983"



a. On		b. In		c. At		d. To			
1b	2c	3d	4a	5d	6b	7c	8c	9c	10d
11c	12c	13b	14a	15d	16a	17b	18a	19d	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 14</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>RELATIVE CLAUSES</b>	

### Exercise 1

- Sunday is the day\_\_\_\_\_ I go to Water park with my kinds.  
a. when                      b. where                      c. why                      d. which
- Do you know the reason\_\_\_\_\_ 006 was killed?  
a. when                      b. where                      c. why                      d. which
- That was the reason\_\_\_\_\_ he didn't marry her.  
a. when                      b. where                      c. why                      d. which
- An architect is someone\_\_\_\_\_ deigns buildings.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- The boy to\_\_\_\_\_ I lent my money is poor.  
a. that                      b. whom                      c. who                      d. which
- The land and the people\_\_\_\_\_ I have met are nice.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. which
- Did you ever find out\_\_\_\_\_ penetrated in your house last month?  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. which
- The year\_\_\_\_\_ the first man traveled in space will never be forgotten.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. when                      d. where
- I cannot tell you all\_\_\_\_\_ I heard.  
a. Which                      b. that                      c. as                      d. because
- I can answer the question\_\_\_\_\_ you day is very difficult.  
a. which                      b. whom                      c. who                      d. whose
- We saw the girl\_\_\_\_\_ you say is beautiful.  
a. which                      b. whom                      c. who                      d. whose
- This is the place\_\_\_\_\_ the battle took place ten years ago.  
a. which                      b. in where                      c. where                      d. from where
- Sunday is the day\_\_\_\_\_ which we usually go fishing.  
a. during                      b. at                      c. in                      d. on
- The person\_\_\_\_\_ you want to see is not her.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
- This is the last time\_\_\_\_\_ I speak to you  
a. of which                      b. that                      c. who                      d. whose
- He talked about the books and the authors\_\_\_\_\_ interested him.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. which                      d. whom
- He talked about the books and the authors\_\_\_\_\_ interested him.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. which                      d. whom
- You know your lesson\_\_\_\_\_ surprises me.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. that                      d. no word is needed
- Bondi is the beautiful beach\_\_\_\_\_ I used to sunbathe.  
a. when                      b. where                      c. which                      d. why

20. Dec 26th, 2005 was the day\_\_\_\_\_ the terrible tsunami happened  
 a. when                      b. where                      c. why                      d. which

1a	2a	3c	4a	5b	6c	7a	8c	9b	10a
11c	12c	13d	14b	15c	16a	17b	18d	19b	20a

## Exercise 2

- The woman\_\_\_\_\_ lives next door is doctor.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- The boy \_\_\_\_\_ Mary likes is my son.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- The boy\_\_\_\_\_ eyes are brown is my son.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- The book \_\_\_\_\_ is on the table is interesting.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- The book \_\_\_\_\_ you bought yesterday is interesting.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- The table\_\_\_\_\_ legs are broken should be repaired.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- The book \_\_\_\_\_ you bought yesterday is interesting.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. 的
- This is the room \_\_\_\_\_ 006 was killed.  
 a. when                      b. where                      c. why                      d. which
- The princess was happy during the years\_\_\_\_\_ she lived with the fairy.  
 a. when                      b. in which                      c. where                      d. that
- The town\_\_\_\_\_ we are living is noisy and crowded  
 a. in where                      b. which                      c. at which                      d. where
- The year\_\_\_\_\_ we came to live here was 1975.  
 a. when                      b. which                      c. that                      d. in the time
- The teacher\_\_\_\_\_ house is next to mine died this morning.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- He was loyal to\_\_\_\_\_ trusted him.  
 a. whomever                      b. whom                      c. whoever                      d. what
- The knife\_\_\_\_\_ we cut bread is very sharp.  
 a. with that                      b. which                      c. with which                      d. that
- Tonight I'll do the assignment\_\_\_\_\_ gave us last week.  
 a. the teacher                      b. who the teacher                      c. whom the teacher                      d. of the teacher
- The lady\_\_\_\_\_ son went on a picnic with us last weekend is a teacher at our school.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. that
- He has just gone to his friend's house\_\_\_\_\_ there is a party today.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. that
- Take\_\_\_\_\_ measures you consider best.  
 a. however                      b. whenever                      c. wherever                      d. whatever
- \_\_\_\_\_difficulties you may encounter, I'm sure you'll succeed.  
 a. how                      b. what ever                      c. however                      d. how greater
- He is the only friend \_\_\_\_\_ I like.  
 a. who                      b. that                      c. whom                      d. whose

1a	2b	3d	4c	5c	6d	7d	8b	9a	10d
11a	12d	13c	14c	15a	16c	17d	18d	19b	20b

### Exercise 3

- What was the name of the girl\_\_\_\_\_ phoned you last night?  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- What was the name of the girl\_\_\_\_\_ you phone last night?  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
- The bed\_\_\_\_\_ which I slept was too soft.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. for
- I didn't get the job\_\_\_\_\_ which I applied.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. for
- The man \_\_\_\_\_ whom she is married has been married twice before.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. to
- The party\_\_\_\_\_ which we went wasn't very enjoyable.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. to
- Who was that girl\_\_\_\_\_ whom you were yesterday?  
a. with                      b. on                      c. at                      d. in
- The fight\_\_\_\_\_ which we wanted to travel was fully booked.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. for
- I enjoy my job because I like the people\_\_\_\_\_ whom I work.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. for
- I wasn't interested in the things\_\_\_\_\_ which they were talking.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. about
- The house\_\_\_\_\_ which I am living is not in very good condition  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. for
- My brother Jim, \_\_\_\_\_ lives in Houston, is a doctor.  
a. that                      b. who                      c. whom                      d. which
- Brad told me about his new job, \_\_\_\_\_ he's enjoying very much.  
a. that                      b. who                      c. whom                      d. which
- We stayed at the Grand Hotel, \_\_\_\_\_ Ann recommended to us.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. that
- My English teacher, \_\_\_\_\_ comes from Australia, loves computers.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. that
- She is the most beautiful girl\_\_\_\_\_ ever lived.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. that
- There were two small rooms in the beach house\_\_\_\_\_ served as a kitchen.  
a. the smaller of which                      b. the smallest of which  
c. the smaller of them                      d. smallest of that
- The decision was postponed, \_\_\_\_\_ was exactly what he wanted.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. who                      d. whom
- All the people\_\_\_\_\_ have gone into the room are still young.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. that
- The year\_\_\_\_\_ he died was full of calamities.  
a. on which                      b. which                      c. in which                      d. where

1a	2b	3a	4d	5d	6d	7a	8b	9d	10d
11a	12b	13d	14c	15a	16d	17a	18a	19d	20c

#### Exercise 4

- The new model, \_\_\_\_ had just come out, is the best so far.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
- The rumour \_\_\_\_ we heard yesterday is not true.  
a. that                      b. which                      c. no word is needed      d. all are correct
- The picnic was postponed, \_\_\_\_ was due to the weather.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. who                      d. whom
- I was happy during the years \_\_\_\_ I lived with my grandfather.  
a. when                      b. that                      c. in which                      d. where
- The area \_\_\_\_ we are living is quiet.  
a. which                      b. at which                      c. in where                      d. where
- The man \_\_\_\_ she loves has been captured by the enemy.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
- The student \_\_\_\_ you just met is in one of my classes.  
a. his parents                      b. whose parents                      c. parents of his                      d. parents who
- The woman \_\_\_\_ lives next door to us is a weather forecaster on a local TV station.  
a. whose                      b. she                      c. whom                      d. who
- The speech \_\_\_\_ we listened last night was informative.  
a. to which                      b. which to                      c. to that                      d. that
- This morning I met Diane, \_\_\_\_ I hadn't seen for ages.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. that
- Amy, \_\_\_\_ car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. that
- Mrs. Bond is going to spend a few weeks in Sweden, \_\_\_\_ her daughter lives.  
a. when                      b. where                      c. why                      d. that
- Jack has three brothers, all of \_\_\_\_ are married  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. that
- They gave us a lot of information, most of \_\_\_\_ was useless.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. that
- There were a lot of people at the party, only a few of \_\_\_\_ I had met before.  
a. whom                      b. whom                      c. them                      d. that
- I have sent him two letters, neither of \_\_\_\_ has arrived.  
a. who                      b. them                      c. which                      d. that
- John won \$20,000, half of \_\_\_\_ he gave to his parents.  
a. it                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. that
- Ten people applied for the job, none of \_\_\_\_ were suitable.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. them                      d. that
- She couldn't come to the party, \_\_\_\_ was perfectly true.  
a. who                      b. it                      c. which                      d. that
- Jill isn't on the phone, \_\_\_\_ makes it difficult to contact her.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. who                      d. it

1d	2d	3a	4a	5d	6b	7b	8d	9a	10b
11c	12b	13b	14c	15b	16c	17c	18b	19c	20a

### Exercise 5

1. You need to talk to a person \_\_\_\_ you can trust. You will feel better if you do.  
a. whose                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. 谁
2. Bod is the kind of person to \_\_\_\_ one can talk about anything.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. him
3. He is a person \_\_\_\_ friends trust him.  
a. who                      b. his                      c. that                      d. whose
4. I'm looking for an electric can opener \_\_\_\_ also can sharpen knives.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. 谁
5. People \_\_\_\_ live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. 谁
6. The problems \_\_\_\_ Tony has seem insurmountable.  
a. what                      b. he                      c. that                      d. 谁
7. The man \_\_\_\_ I introduced you to last night may be the next president of the university.  
a. which                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. 谁
8. Cathy is trustworthy. She's a person upon \_\_\_\_ you can always depend.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. 谁
9. Your career should focus on a field in \_\_\_\_ you are genuinely interested.  
a. which                      b. what                      c. that                      d. 谁
10. People \_\_\_\_ outlook on life is optimistic are usually happy people.  
a. whose                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. which
11. They said they didn't have any money, \_\_\_\_ was a pity.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. this                      d. it
12. I haven't got a passport, \_\_\_\_ means I can't leave my country.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. this                      d. it
13. He offered to let me stay in his house, \_\_\_\_ was very nice of him.  
a. this                      b. which                      c. it                      d. that
14. They didn't thank us for the meal before they left \_\_\_\_ I thought was very rude of them.  
a. this                      b. which                      c. it                      d. that
15. The part of town where I live is very noisy at night, \_\_\_\_ makes it difficult to sleep.  
a. this                      b. where                      c. that                      d. which
16. That's the room \_\_\_\_ I used to stay.  
a. which                      b. when                      c. where                      d. why
17. That's the one \_\_\_\_ they serve the best food.  
a. which                      b. when                      c. where                      d. why
18. That's the one \_\_\_\_ they serve the best food  
a. where                      b. which                      c. when                      d. why
19. Doc Let is the beach \_\_\_\_ I used to sunbathe.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. when                      d. why
20. It was the time \_\_\_\_ I had a lot of toys.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. when                      d. why

1c,d	2b	3d	4b,c	5a	6c,d	7b,c,d	8b	9a	10a
11a	12a	13b	14b	15d	16c	17b	18a	19a	20c

### Exercise 6

1. That is the place\_\_\_\_\_ the accident occurred.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. on which                      d. that
2. There was a time\_\_\_\_\_ movies cost a dime.  
a. as                              b. where                      c. when                      d. which
3. One of the people \_\_\_\_\_ I admire most in the history of the world is Gandhi.  
a. that                              b. which                      c. whose                      d. of them
4. I enjoyed talking to he people \_\_\_\_\_ I had dinner last night.  
a. to whom                      b. with whom                      c. with that                      d. with whose
5. I received two job offers, \_\_\_\_\_ I accepted.  
a. neither of which      b. neither of them      c. neither of that                      d. neither of whom
6. I have three brothers, \_\_\_\_\_ are professional athletes.  
a. two of which              b. two of whom              c. both of which                      d. two of them
7. Sally lost her job, \_\_\_\_\_ wasn't surprising.  
a. that                              b. what                              c. it                              d. which
8. Her boss fired her, \_\_\_\_\_ made her angry.  
a. that                              b. what                              c. which                              d. it
9. Those were the days\_\_\_\_\_ we played truant.  
a. where                              b. which                              c. why                              d. when
10. That was the time \_\_\_\_\_ I was unhappy.  
a. where                              b. when                              c. which                              d. why
11. That's the reason\_\_\_\_\_ I didn't come to the meeting last night.  
a. where                              b. when                              c. which                              d. why
12. I must find a time\_\_\_\_\_ I can tell her the truth.  
a. where                              b. how                              c. when                              d. why
13. I know a place\_\_\_\_\_ there are a lot of daffodils.  
a. where                              b. how                              c. when                              d. why
14. Dr. Sales is a person\_\_\_\_\_  
a. In whom I don't have much confidence.  
b. In that I don't have much confidence.  
c. whom I dont' have much confidence in him  
d. I don't have much confidence
15. "Is April twenty-first the day\_\_\_\_\_?"  
"No, the twenty - second".  
a. you'll arrive then                      b. when you'll arrive  
c. on that you'll arrive                      d. when you'll arrive on
16. The severe drought\_\_\_\_\_ occurred last summer ruined the corn crop.  
a. that it                              b. which it                              c. it                              d. that
17. Florida, \_\_\_\_\_ the Sunshine State, attracts many tourists every year.  
a. is                              b. knows as                              c. is known as                              d. that is known as
18. The new shopping mall is gigantic. It's advertised as a place\_\_\_\_\_ you can find just about anything you might want to buy.  
a. where                              b. which                              c. in where                              d. in that
19. I have always wanted to visit Paris, \_\_\_\_\_ of France.  
a. is the capital      b. which the capital is      c. that is the capital      d. the capital
20. The chemistry book \_\_\_\_\_ was a little expensive.  
a. that I bought it      b. I bought that      c. what I bought      d. I bought

1a	2c	3a	4b	5a	6b	7d	8c	9d	10b
11d	12c	13a	14a	15b	16d	17b	18d	19d	20

Name:	<b>Basis No 15</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>NOUN CLAUSES</b>	

- The function of "That clause" in "The basis for this American custom is that most parents teach their children\_\_\_\_\_"
  - complement to "the basis"
  - in apposition to "the basis"
  - direct object of the verb "was"
  - subject of the verb "was"
- They always give the available seats to \_\_\_\_\_ comes first.
  - whoever
  - whom
  - whomever
  - that
- The people at the party were worried about Janet because no one was aware\_\_\_\_\_ she had gone.
  - where that
  - of where
  - of the place
  - the place
- Is this\_\_\_\_\_ you asked him for?
  - that
  - what
  - which
  - where
- Punish\_\_\_\_\_ is late.
  - whom
  - that
  - whomever
  - whoever
- \_\_\_\_\_ becoming extinct is of great concern to zoologists.
  - that giant pandas are
  - are giant pandas
  - giant pandas are
  - giant panda's
- "I'm looking for the mail. Do you know\_\_\_\_\_?"  
"Usually it comes by 4:00"
  - when it will arrive
  - when it does arrive
  - when does it arrive
  - when will it arrive
- "Could you help me for a while?"  
"Sure. Tell me what\_\_\_\_\_ me to do"
  - you want
  - want
  - do you want
  - you do want
- \_\_\_\_\_is a question scientists have yet to answer.
  - How many moons does Pluto have
  - How many moons Pluto has
  - Pluto has how many moons
  - Pluto's moons number
- Because of the rain, people are calling to ask\_\_\_\_\_ take place.
  - whether the parade will
  - if or not the parade will
  - the parade will
  - will the parade
- Scientists are attempting to find out\_\_\_\_\_ there is life on other planets.
  - if or not
  - whether if
  - whether or not
  - whether not
- "Look at the new dress I bought".  
"How\_\_\_\_\_ such an expensive dress?".
  - did you afford
  - you afforded
  - afforded you
  - did afford you
- "I haven't seen you for a long time".  
"How\_\_\_\_\_ such an expensive dress?"
  - that your name was
  - what was your name
  - who your name was
  - what your name was
- \_\_\_\_\_ in large quantities is not necessarily an indication of its quality.
  - A product is sold
  - It is a product sold
  - That a product is sold
  - A product sells
- "Call the restaurant and ask for that information"

"I don't remember\_\_\_\_\_"

- a. who I should speak  
b. with whom I should speak  
c. who should I speak with  
d. whom should I speak with

16. "The postal strike started today"

"\_\_\_\_\_something to prevent it?"

- a. Why does the government  
c. Why the government doesn't do
- b. Why doesn't the government do  
d. Why the government does

17. "Why doesn't Kurt get his hair cut?"

"I don't know\_\_\_\_\_"

- a. why he doesn't      b. why doesn't he      c. why he does      d. why does he

18. "Are you planning to go to college?"

"\_\_\_\_\_ go depends on my financial situation".

- a. If or not I                      b. Whether or not I    c. Whether if I                      d. I

19. "Why did you talk to the teacher after class?"

"I didn't understand\_\_\_\_\_ during the lecture".

- a. what she was taking                                      b. what was she talking about
- c. what she was talking about                            d. what she was walking about

20. "Do you know Don Kline?"

"I remember the name but I can't remember\_\_\_\_\_?"

- a. what does he look like                      b. what he look like  
c. what he does look like                      d. like what he looks

1a	2a	3b	4b	5d	6a	7a	8a	9b	10a
11c	12a	13d	14c	15b	16b	17a	18b	19d	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 16 ARTICLES</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

## Exercise 1

1. I would live to live by \_\_\_\_\_ sea.  
a. the                      b. a                      c. an                      d. 一个
2. Harry is a sailor. He spends most of his life at\_\_\_\_\_ see.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. 一个
3. There are billions of stars in \_\_\_\_\_ space.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. 一个                      d. the
4. He tried to park his car but\_\_\_\_\_ space wasn't big enough.  
a. the                      b. a                      c. an                      d. 一个
5. We often watch\_\_\_\_\_ television  
a. the                      b. a                      c. an                      d. 一个
6. Can you turn off\_\_\_\_\_ television, please?  
a. the                      b. a                      c. an                      d. 一个
7. We had\_\_\_\_\_ dinner in a restaurant.  
a.                      b. an                      c. 一个                      d. the
8. We had\_\_\_\_\_ meal in a restaurant.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. 一个



9. Thank you. That was \_\_\_\_\_ very nice lunch.  
a. a                                      b. an                                      c. the                                      d.   
10. Where can \_\_\_\_\_ people buy everything they need?  
a. the                                      b. a                                      c. an                                      d. no article is needed
11. Her parents are now working in \_\_\_\_\_ Europe.  
a. the                                      b. a                                      c. an                                      d. no article is needed
12. He majors \_\_\_\_\_ in English.  
a. a                                      b. an                                      c. the                                      d. no article is needed
13. Mark Twain, \_\_\_\_\_ American writer, wrote "Life on the Mississippi River".  
a. an                                      b. a                                      c. the                                      d. no article
14. Paris is splendid by \_\_\_\_\_ night.  
a. a                                      b. an                                      c. the                                      d. no article
15. We might be able to catch \_\_\_\_\_ last train if we hurried.  
a. a                                      b. an                                      c. the                                      d. no article
16. \_\_\_\_\_ used razor blade is \_\_\_\_\_ useless thing.  
a. The/ the                                      b. A/ a                                      c. An/ an                                      d. no article
17. We live at \_\_\_\_\_ third house from the church.  
a. the                                      b. a                                      c. an                                      d. no article
18. My aunt has \_\_\_\_\_ interesting novel.  
a. the                                      b. an                                      c. a                                      d. no article
19. It was \_\_\_\_\_ best film I had ever read.  
a. the                                      b. an                                      c. a                                      d. no article
20. A video lab is \_\_\_\_\_ useful means for language learning.  
a. the                                      b. an                                      c. a                                      d. no article

1a	2d	3c	4a	5d	6a	7c	8a	9a	10d
11d	12d	13a	14d	15c	16b	17a	18c	19a	20c

## Exercise 2

1. Mrs. Lan went to \_\_\_\_\_ school to meet her son's teacher.  
a.                                         b. a                                      c. an                                      d. the
2. The workmen went to \_\_\_\_\_ church to repair the roof.  
a.                                         b. the                                      c. a                                      d. an
3. Carol went to \_\_\_\_\_ prison to meet her brother.  
a. the                                      b. a                                      c. an                                      d.   
4. This morning I bought a newspaper and a magazine \_\_\_\_\_ newspaper is in my bag but I don't know where \_\_\_\_\_ magazine.  
a. a/ a                                      b. a/ the                                      c. the / the                                      d. the / a
5. My parents have \_\_\_\_\_ cat and \_\_\_\_\_ dog. The dog never bites the cat.  
a. a/ a                                      b. a / the                                      c. the/ the                                      d. the/ a
6. We live in \_\_\_\_\_ big house in \_\_\_\_\_ middle of the village.  
a. a/ a                                      b. a / the                                      c. the/ the                                      d. the/ a
7. I'm looking for \_\_\_\_\_ job. Did Mary get \_\_\_\_\_ job she applied for?  
a. a/the                                      b. the /a                                      c. a/ a                                      d. the/ the
8. Did \_\_\_\_\_ police find \_\_\_\_\_ person who stole your bicycle?  
a. a/a                                      b. the / the                                      c. a / the                                      d. the / a
9. We went out for \_\_\_\_\_ meal last night \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant we went was excellent.

10. As I was walking along the street, I saw \_\_\_\_\_ \$10 note on \_\_\_\_\_ pavement.  
 a. a/a                      b. the/ the                      c. a / the                      d. the / a
11. The Soviet Union was \_\_\_\_\_ first country to sent a man into \_\_\_\_\_ space.  
 a. the/the                      b. ~~the~~ ~~the~~                      c. ~~the~~ the                      d. the/~~the~~
12. Did you watch "Titanic" on \_\_\_\_\_ television or at \_\_\_\_\_ cinema?  
 a. the/the                      b. ~~the~~/~~the~~                      c. ~~the~~ the                      d. the/~~the~~
13. After \_\_\_\_\_ lunch, we went for a walk by \_\_\_\_\_ sea.  
 a. the/ the                      b. ~~the~~ ~~the~~                      c. ~~the~~ the                      d. the/ ~~the~~
14. Peru is \_\_\_\_\_ country in south America \_\_\_\_\_ capital is Lima  
 a. a/a                      b. a / the                      c. the/ the                      d. the/a
15. I never listen to \_\_\_\_\_ radio. In fact I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ radio.  
 a. a/a                      b. a/ the                      c. the/ the                      d. the/ a
16. It was a beautiful day \_\_\_\_\_ sun shone brightly in \_\_\_\_\_ sky.  
 a. a/a                      b. a/ the                      c. the/ the                      d. the / a
17. It is said the Robinhood robbed \_\_\_\_\_ rich and gave the money to \_\_\_\_\_ poor.  
 a. a/a                      b. a/ the                      c. the/the                      d. the/a
18. Life is not so easy for \_\_\_\_\_ unemployed.  
 a. the                      b. a                      c. an                      d. ~~the~~
19. Many people were killed in the accident. The bodies of \_\_\_\_\_ dead were taken away.  
 a. the                      b. a                      c. an                      d. ~~the~~
20. Lan has been a nurse all her life. She has spent her life caring for \_\_\_\_\_ sick.  
 a. the                      b. a                      c. an                      d. ~~the~~

1d	2b	3a	4c	5a	6b	7a	8b	9c	10c
11d	12c	13c	14b	15d	16c	17c	18a	19a	20a

Name:	<b>Basis No 16</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>CONJUNCTIONS</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. She's not only beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent.  
 a. but also                      b. but                      c. however                      d. yet
2. I was very tired, \_\_\_\_\_ I determined to walk on to the next village.  
 a. therefore                      b. however                      c. and                      d. or
3. You can come here either on Monday \_\_\_\_\_ on Friday.  
 a. or                      b. nor                      c. both                      d. and
4. He had to act immediately; \_\_\_\_\_ he would have been too late.  
 a. consequently                      b. nevertheless                      c. still                      d. otherwise
5. They said both he \_\_\_\_\_ I were to come.  
 a. and                      b. but                      c. or                      d. so
6. The weather in Dalat is neither too hot in summer \_\_\_\_\_ too cold in winter.  
 a. or                      b. nor                      c. or else                      d. otherwise
7. Jane is beautiful and intelligent \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. too                      b. so                      c. both                      d. moreover
8. Jane is beautiful and intelligent; \_\_\_\_\_ she's very kind.

- a. moreover                      b. however                      c. for all that                      d. on the other hand
9. He never works \_\_\_\_\_ he gains all the prizes.  
a. furthermore                      b. whereas                      c. but                      d. accordingly
10. The sun is shining and there are very few clouds; \_\_\_\_\_, I am sure it is going to rain.  
a. what's more                      b. hence                      c. thus                      d. nevertheless
11. Bill is in class 12, \_\_\_\_\_ John, who is a year older, is only in class 4.  
a. and                      b. whereas                      c. either                      d. nevertheless
12. You must leave at once, \_\_\_\_\_ you miss the train.  
a. however                      b. yet                      c. still                      d. otherwise
13. You need to get some job retraining \_\_\_\_\_ it, you risk being laid off.  
a. If so                      b. If not                      c. With                      d. Without
14. Could I have rice \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes, please?  
a. but                      b. but also                      c. instead                      d. instead of
15. \_\_\_\_\_ His denial, we knew that he was guilty.  
a. Despite                      b. In spite                      c. Because                      d. And
16. John's family is very happy \_\_\_\_\_ his being awarded a scholarship.  
a. because of                      b. if                      c. either                      d. nor
17. Graphite is a soft, slippery solid that is a good conductor of \_\_\_\_\_ heat and electricity.  
a. not just                      b. and                      c. both                      d. moreover
18. The lecture was \_\_\_\_\_ interesting and instructive.  
a. as                      b. either                      c. neither                      d. both
19. Both Mary and Allen \_\_\_\_\_ Jean are going on the tour.  
a. as well                      b. as well as                      c. nor                      d. but
20. He likes travel, and \_\_\_\_\_ does she.  
a. too                      b. such                      c. so                      d. but

1a	2b	3a	4d	5a	6b	7a	8a	9c	10d
11b	12d	13d	14d	15a	16a	17c	18d	19b	20c

## Exercise 2

1. I'm worried about it, and he is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. too                      b. also                      c. but also                      d. a or b
2. He borrowed money \_\_\_\_\_ he could finish his education.  
a. that                      b. so that                      c. such as                      d. too
3. The temperature drops \_\_\_\_\_ the sun sets.  
a. while                      b. for                      c. because                      d. when
4. Some birds cannot fly well, \_\_\_\_\_, the chicken has wings, but its flying muscles are not strong enough to be useful.  
a. for example                      b. for instance                      c. such as                      d. a or b
5. The missing piece is small, \_\_\_\_\_ nevertheless important.  
a. or                      b. but                      c. and                      d. so
6. I'm very homesick \_\_\_\_\_ a student a broad.  
a. as                      b. while                      c. because of                      d. due to
7. Just \_\_\_\_\_ he died, my friend who wrote poetry published his first book.  
a. but                      b. either                      c. and                      d. before
8. Blindfish, which spend their whole lives in caves, have \_\_\_\_\_ eyes nor body pigments.  
a. not any                      b. either                      c. nor                      d. without

9. \_\_\_\_\_ their small size, the cameras take good pictures.  
a. In spite of                      b. Despite of                      c. Because                      d. And
10. She could not decide \_\_\_\_\_ to drive \_\_\_\_\_ to jump into water.  
a. both/ or                      b. not only/ but also                      c. either/ or                      d. whether/or
11. Flying is not only faster, \_\_\_\_\_ safer than traveling by car.  
a. also                      b. so                      c. and                      d. but also
12. Beth can play the guitar \_\_\_\_\_ the violin.  
a. also                      b. so                      c. but also                      d. and
13. \_\_\_\_\_ his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.  
a. Although                      b. In spite of                      c. Despite                      d. b or c
14. I like bananas, \_\_\_\_\_ my brother doesn't  
a. because                      b. and                      c. but                      d. even though
15. Glucose does not have to be digested, \_\_\_\_\_ it can be put directly into the bloodstream.  
a. so                      b. while                      c. and since                      d. such
16. \_\_\_\_\_ few species that live on the ground, most monkeys live in trees.  
a. There are                      b. A                      c. All but                      d. Except for
17. She closed the door \_\_\_\_\_ left for the city.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. or                      d. therefore
18. The mail comes at ten o'clock every day \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.  
a. except                      b. although                      c. or                      d. and
19. We need wither a nail \_\_\_\_\_ a screw to hang this picture.  
a. and                      b. or                      c. both                      d. but
20. You had better come yourself \_\_\_\_\_ send a friend.  
a. either                      b. neither                      c. or else                      d. while

1a	2b	3d	4d	5b	6b	7d	8b	9a	10d
11d	12d	13d	14c	15a	16d	17a	18a	19b	20c

### Exercise 3

1. We should be firm \_\_\_\_\_ patient in this case.  
a. and                      b. or                      c. in stead of                      d. rather
2. \_\_\_\_\_ food we eat lacks minerals, then the body can use the stores from its bones for more urgent needs.  
a. As the                      b. If the                      c. The                      d. Since
3. It sounds like something wrong with the car's engine \_\_\_\_\_, we'd better take it to the garage immediately.  
a. Otherwise                      b. Without it                      c. If not                      d. If so
4. We didn't go to Paris. We went to Rome \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. also                      b. but also                      c. instead                      d. instead of
5. No one \_\_\_\_\_ Kathy knows very much about it.  
a. and                      b. as                      c. but                      d. however
6. Some birds, \_\_\_\_\_ robins and cardinals, spend their winter in the North.  
a. as                      b. such as                      c. and                      d. likely
7. Galaxies are composed of millions of individual stars \_\_\_\_\_ are so far away that they appear as single points of light.  
a. but they                      b. they                      c. in spite of                      d. contrary
8. Internet is a very fast \_\_\_\_\_ convenient way for us to get information.

- a. and                      b. or                      c. therefore                      d. but
9. It's raining, \_\_\_\_\_ I can't go to the beach.  
a. so                      b. or                      c. but                      d. and
10. An effective paragraph must \_\_\_\_\_ be unified and ordered but also complete.  
a. in addition                      b. either                      c. not only                      d. as well
11. \_\_\_\_\_ his poor English, he managed to communicate his problem very clearly.  
a. Although                      b. Even though                      c. though                      d. In spite of
12. He is saving \_\_\_\_\_ he can go on vacation.  
a. so that                      b. so                      c. unless                      d. that
13. The flight was canceled \_\_\_\_\_ the weather conditions were bad.  
a. because of                      b. due to the fact that                      c. thanks                      d. that
14. Pheasants spend most of their time on the ground, \_\_\_\_\_ many species perch in trees at night.  
a. as well as                      b. in spite of                      c. because                      d. although
15. Natural fiber comes from \_\_\_\_\_ animal or plant.  
a. either                      b. otherwise                      c. or                      d. thus
16. \_\_\_\_\_ Marge, three couples are invited  
a. Addition                      b. Besides                      c. Next                      d. Moreover
17. All of the students \_\_\_\_\_ the seniors will receive their grades in two weeks.  
a. but                      b. except                      c. and                      d. a or b
18. It was still painful, \_\_\_\_\_ I went to see a doctor.  
a. but                      b. or                      c. so                      d. however
19. \_\_\_\_\_ pipelines are expensive to build, they are relatively cheap to operate and maintain.  
a. Because                      b. That                      c. Although                      d. Despite
20. He felt ill \_\_\_\_\_ he went to bed early.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. or                      d. so

1c	2b	3d	4c	5c	6b	7a	8a	9a	10c
11d	12a	13b	14d	15a	16b	17d	18c	19c	20d

#### Exercise 4

1. The examination was very difficult, \_\_\_\_\_ very few were able to pass.  
a. consequently                      b. as well as                      c. on the hand                      d. whereas
2. We know \_\_\_\_\_ him and his wife.  
a. either                      b. neither                      c. both                      d. as well
3. You can send letters from Hongkong \_\_\_\_\_ by Suez or by Canada.  
a. either                      b. neither                      c. both                      d. as well
4. There as no one there; \_\_\_\_\_ I went away.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. or                      d. so
5. He was very young and had no experience of that type of work he was not given the post.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. or                      d. therefore
6. He has to pay a fine of \$10, \_\_\_\_\_ he had to spend 10 days in prison  
a. or else                      b. while                      c. whereas                      d. however
7. He is very cleaver and wins all the prizes \_\_\_\_\_ his brother never seems to know a thing.  
a. and                      b. while                      c. therefore                      d. or
8. You must tell him where you are going \_\_\_\_\_ when you will be back  
a. and both                      b. and as well                      c. and also                      d. and too
9. He was the best in class at Maths and English; \_\_\_\_\_ he was the best footballer in the school.

- a. moreover                      b. however                      c. or                      d. so
10. Geography is a very interesting subject; \_\_\_\_\_ very few people study it thoroughly.  
a. and                      b. however                      c. or                      d. so
11. It was very wet \_\_\_\_\_ I decided not to go  
a. and                      b. but                      c. or                      d. so
12. He is very fond of music \_\_\_\_\_ reading.  
a. as                      b. as well                      c. as well as                      d. as good as
13. I told him to come at three \_\_\_\_\_ to bring his wife with him.  
a. also                      b. and also                      c. so                      d. too
14. Our opponents have a very good team; \_\_\_\_\_ there is no need for us to lose hope.  
a. and                      b. therefore                      c. moreover                      d. however
15. I'll offer it to Tom \_\_\_\_\_, he may not want it.  
a. Even though                      b. As                      c. When                      d. However
16. There is fog at Heathrow; the plane, \_\_\_\_\_, has been diverted.  
a. otherwise                      b. so                      c. therefore                      d. or
17. He says he will pay; I don't think he will, \_\_\_\_\_  
a. though                      b. even though                      c. in case                      d. but
18. They are ugly and expensive, \_\_\_\_\_ people buy them.  
a. Already                      b. Yet                      c. Thus                      d. Hence
19. You aren't rich; \_\_\_\_\_, you could do something to help him.  
a. yet                      b. still                      c. for                      d. but
20. \_\_\_\_\_ the severe weather conditions all the cars completed the course.  
a. In spite                      b. Despite                      c. However                      d. Yet

1a	2c	3a	4d	5d	6a	7b	8c	9a	10b
11d	12c	13b	14d	15d	16c	17a	18b	19b	20b

### Exercise 5

1. \_\_\_\_\_ we lived in town, we often went to the theater  
a. After                      b. When                      c. For                      d. Or
2. He took the food eagerly, \_\_\_\_\_ he had eaten nothing since dawn.  
a. if                      b. in case                      c. but                      d. for
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the sun rose, the fog dispersed.  
a. As                      b. When                      c. Before                      d. After
4. \_\_\_\_\_ a married man, he has to think of his family.  
a. If                      b. As                      c. or                      d. so
5. Tired \_\_\_\_\_ he was, he offered to carry her.  
a. as                      b. though                      c. Although                      d. however
6. Some people waste food \_\_\_\_\_ others don't have enough.  
a. as                      b. in case                      c. while                      d. before
7. \_\_\_\_\_ she came to know him better, she relied on him more.  
a. While                      b. Because of                      c. Though                      d. As
8. \_\_\_\_\_ I sympathize with your point of view, I cannot accept it.  
a. While                      b. Although                      c. But                      d. a or b
9. How can you expect your children to be truthful \_\_\_\_\_ you yourself tell lies?  
a. when                      b. therefore                      c. because                      d. since
10. Strong \_\_\_\_\_ he was, he couldn't lift it.

- a. like                      b. as                      c. or                      d. and
11. He stole, not \_\_\_\_\_ he wanted the money, \_\_\_\_\_ because he liked stealing.  
a. for/ but                      b. because/but                      c. although/however                      d. because/and
12. Not everybody thinks the building is ugly \_\_\_\_\_, some people say it looks marvelous.  
a. On the contrary                      b. Because                      c. Although                      d. Since
13. Business has been very bad this year \_\_\_\_\_, we have had to close one of our factories.  
a. consequently                      b. as a result                      c. but                      d. a or b
14. Take a map with you \_\_\_\_\_ you lose your way.  
a. if                      b. in case                      c. so that                      d. so
15. The play was very boring, \_\_\_\_\_ they walked out.  
a. so                      b. if                      c. when                      d. while
16. She'll only do the job \_\_\_\_\_ you pay he more.  
a. unless                      b. after                      c. if                      d. as
17. He hasn't written to us \_\_\_\_\_ he left.  
a. when                      b. for                      c. because                      d. since
18. I never take an umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ it's raining heavily.  
a. unless                      b. if                      c. otherwise                      d. or
19. He got a new alarm clock \_\_\_\_\_ he'd get up on time.  
a. because                      b. and                      c. so that                      d. so'
20. He agreed to go climbing \_\_\_\_\_ he hated heights.  
a. despite                      b. in spite of                      c. so                      d. although

1b	2d	3a	4b	5a	6c	7d	8d	9a	10b
11b	12a	13d	14b	15a	16c	17d	18a	19c	20d

### Exercise 6

1. We decided not to go out for a meal \_\_\_\_\_ we were simply too tired.  
a. but                      b. if                      c. because                      d. unless
2. Have you really got no money \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that you've had a part time job this term?  
a. although                      b. in spite of                      c. because of                      d. in case
3. We've been thinking about nothing else \_\_\_\_\_ we bought our plane tickets.  
a. until                      b. since                      c. so                      d. after
4. I'd go away somewhere \_\_\_\_\_ I could afford to.  
a. if                      b. in case                      c. as                      d. but
5. Wicky and I will be off to France \_\_\_\_\_ this term is over  
a. for                      b. as                      c. as soon as                      d. in spite of
6. We took lots of photos. We videoed the speeches \_\_\_\_\_  
a. but also                      b. however                      c. as well                      d. in addition
7. We're going to buy a special ticket \_\_\_\_\_ we can go anywhere we like on the way.  
a. as if                      b. since                      c. in order                      d. so that
8. I'm not sure a thank you letter is really necessary. \_\_\_\_\_, I can't be bothered to write one.  
a. And                      b. or                      c. As                      d. Anyway
9. It was a terrible journey. \_\_\_\_\_, we got there safely in the end.  
a. Still                      b. Besides                      c. Moreover                      d. If
10. It's a lovely day, isn't it? Yes, beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ have you seen John?  
a. However                      b. by the way                      c. But                      d. nevertheless
11. I couldn't unlock it \_\_\_\_\_ I had the wrong key.

- a. when                      b. while                      c. so as                      d. because
12. He had to take photos of the places he visits. \_\_\_\_\_, he's writing a report of his journey.  
a. In addition                      b. Because                      c. However                      d. And
13. He thought the talk was fascinating. His friend, \_\_\_\_\_ fell asleep halfway through it.  
a. although                      b. nevertheless                      c. however                      d. b or c
14. Olivia booked a babysitter \_\_\_\_\_ she could go out for the evening.  
a. so that                      b. but                      c. so                      d. hence
15. \_\_\_\_\_ we had got on the plane, it started to rain.  
a. If                      b. While                      c. Before                      d. As soon as
16. Jane has a computer, \_\_\_\_\_ she doesn't use it.  
a. and                      b. since                      c. but                      d. in spite of
17. It was cloudy. \_\_\_\_\_, the photos came out very bad.  
a. Result                      b. As a result                      c. However                      d. But
18. You should bring an umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ it rains.  
a. if                      b. unless                      c. in case                      d. because of
19. Mark heard the news on the radio \_\_\_\_\_ he was driving home.  
a. while                      b. as                      c. until                      d. a or b
20. Everyone thought she would accept the offer \_\_\_\_\_, she turned it down.  
a. However                      b. So                      c. Too                      d. Moreover

1c	2b	3b	4a	5c	6c	7d	8d	9a	10b
11d	12a	13d	14a	15d	16c	17b	18c	19d	20a

Name:	<b>Basis No 18 PRONOUNS</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

### Exercise 1

1. \_\_\_\_\_ of them has been turned in stone.  
a. No one                      b. Not one                      c. No                      d. Even one
2. Which thief got a fright? \_\_\_\_\_ with the money.  
a. He                      b. Him                      c. That                      d. The one
3. Erna's friends will be on the coast. That's where \_\_\_\_\_ of them will be.  
a. more                      b. the most                      c. most                      d. the more
4. We are all very excited \_\_\_\_\_ are very excited.  
a. All me                      b. Us all                      c. All us                      d. All of us
5. They didn't steal anything. They stole \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. anything                      b. not anything                      c. not nothing                      d. nothing
6. Which boxes contained clothing?  
a. The wooden                      b. The wood                      c. The woody ones                      d. The wooden ones
7. He wasn't noticed by \_\_\_\_\_ as he crept off the boat.  
a. no one                      b. none                      c. anyone                      d. not one
8. John is a cousin of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. him                      b. his                      c. he                      d. himself
9. John, what is that noise? Is there \_\_\_\_\_ on the street?  
a. something                      b. nothing                      c. anything                      d. none thing



10. Please take these papers and give\_\_\_\_\_ to Mike.  
a. them                      b. it                      c. one                      d. that
11. Tom asked Ann and\_\_\_\_\_ about the new theatre.  
a. I                      b. my                      c. me                      d. self
12. Janice and \_\_\_\_\_ live in an apartment.  
a. me                      b. my                      c. self                      d. I
13. Tom is going to lose\_\_\_\_\_ job.  
a. him                      b. his                      c. he                      d. he's
14. A very large snake killed\_\_\_\_\_ victims.  
a. its                      b. his                      c. her                      d. it
15. I don't want you to pay for me. I'll pay for\_\_\_\_\_  
a. me                      b. yourself                      c. myself                      d. mine
16. It's our own fault. We blame\_\_\_\_\_  
a. ours                      b. us                      c. ourselves                      d. out
17. Tom and Ann stood in front of the mirror and looked at\_\_\_\_\_  
a. each other                      b. themselves                      c. them                      d. herself
18. Tom looked at Ann; Ann looked at Tom. They looked at\_\_\_\_\_  
a. themselves                      b. them                      c. each other                      d. together
19. Domestic eats often show loyalty to them owners by leaving freshly killed prey such as birds for\_\_\_\_\_ to find.  
a. they                      b. he                      c. them                      d. their
20. The United States and Canada have many trade agreements that benefit\_\_\_\_\_  
a. on the other                      b. other                      c. other one                      d. each other

1d	2d	3c	4d	5d	6d	7c	8b	9a	10a
11c	12d	13b	14a	15c	16c	17b	18c	19c	20d

## Exercise 2

1. James is very interested in mathematics and \_\_\_\_\_ applications.  
a. its                      b. their                      c. them                      d. it
2. My picture is different from\_\_\_\_\_  
a. them                      b. theirs                      c. they                      d. themselves
3. He asked \_\_\_\_\_ to leave the office then.  
a. our                      b. we                      c. us                      d. ours
4. You and\_\_\_\_\_ have to finish this before noon.  
a. me                      b. my                      c. mine                      d. I
5. Mr. Scott has a garage. The garage is\_\_\_\_\_  
a. to him                      b. of him                      c. of his                      d. his
6. everybody knows him, know him.  
a. they all                      b. each                      c. every                      d. all they
7. Did\_\_\_\_\_ happen? No, nothing happened.  
a. nothing                      b. anything                      c. any                      d. a thing
8. Neither of us spoke. We\_\_\_\_\_  
a. neither spoke                      b. either spoke                      c. both didn't speak                      d. neither didn't speak
9. This note is only a reminder. It's\_\_\_\_\_  
a. nothing                      b. no one                      c. nothing extra                      d. nothing more
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is your favourite sport? Fishing.

- a. Who                      b. Which                      c. Whom                      d. Whose
11. He doesn't catch anything. He never catches\_\_\_\_\_
- a. nothing                      b. anything                      c. something                      d. everything
12. I am only interested in doing nothing. That's \_\_\_\_\_ I'm interested in.
- a. only                      b. the one                      c. all                      d. the only
13. The girls write\_\_\_\_\_ regularly now.
- a. only                      b. the one                      c. all                      d. the only
14. He could do nothing. He couldn't do\_\_\_\_\_
- a. something                      b. nothing                      c. anything                      d. everything
15. The porter and I looked at each other, \_\_\_\_\_ both smiled.
- a. I                      b. he                      c. we                      d. they
16. Do you like my picture? It's\_\_\_\_\_
- a. a new                      b. one new                      c. new one                      d. a new one
17. I doubt whether\_\_\_\_\_ could read your letter, your hand writing is really terrible.
- a. somebody                      b. anybody                      c. nobody                      d. everybody
18. They told\_\_\_\_\_ there was nothing to be afraid of.
- a. them                      b. their                      c. they                      d. themselves
19. There isn't\_\_\_\_\_ in the next room.
- a. nobody                      b. no one                      c. any one                      d. someone
20. Have you learned by heart all those five poems? I have learned \_\_\_\_\_
- a. both of them                      b. either of them                      c. neither of them                      d. none of them

1a	2b	3c	4d	5d	6a	7b	8c	9a	10b
11c	12b	13a	14c	15c	16d	17b	18d	19c	20d

### Exercise 3

1. The drive gave him a few biscuits; \_\_\_\_\_ was given a few biscuits.
- a. to him                      b. him                      c. for him                      d. he
2. There was nothing else he could do. That was\_\_\_\_\_
- a. the whole                      b. complete                      c. very                      d. all
3. One is never too old to learn; \_\_\_\_\_ are never too old to learn.
- a. we                      b. you                      c. they                      d. everyone
4. Both men realized what was happening; \_\_\_\_\_ could do anything about it.
- a. they neither                      b. neither of them                      c. neither they                      d. either of them
5. They complete\_\_\_\_\_
- a. against one another                      b. the one against the other
- c. each against the other                      d. against each one
6. He gave\_\_\_\_\_ which had not been written out.
- a. the copy to him                      b. him a copy                      c. a copy to him                      d. his the copy
7. It is \_\_\_\_\_ he is very proud of.
- a. the fact                      b. something                      c. that which                      d. what
8. He threatened to remove\_\_\_\_\_ by force.
- a. two                      b. them both                      c. two of them                      d. both them
9. Can there be\_\_\_\_\_ who has not stood in awe at the sight?
- a. no one                      b. none                      c. someone                      d. anyone
10. The telescope was designed to distinguish between random signals and\_\_\_\_\_ which might be in code.

- a. these                      b. those                      c. ones                      d. them
11. Those coats are\_\_\_\_\_
- a. them                      b. their                      c. theirs                      d. they
12. John and his friend gave many books to\_\_\_\_\_
- a. each other                      b. others                      c. one another                      d. each another
13. His friends are rich, but\_\_\_\_\_ are poor.
- a. me                      b. friends of me                      c. mine                      d. my
14. It is\_\_\_\_\_ who says that you do not love her.
- a. she                      b. her                      c. hers                      d. herself
15. They send some books to my sister and \_\_\_\_\_
- a. I                      b. me                      c. myself                      d. mine
16. My father said\_\_\_\_\_ would invite our teacher to dinner on Saturday.
- a. of we                      b. so we                      c. we                      d. that if we
17. \_\_\_\_\_ of the students in my class could solve the problem yesterday.
- a. none                      b. neither                      c. either                      d. not much
18. Pick out the correct sentence.
- a. They fight each other everyday                      b. They flight themselves
- c. They fight one another                      d. a and c are correct
19. You said you were going to introduce a friend of\_\_\_\_\_ who wanted to buy a new house.
- a. you                      b. yours                      c. yourself                      d. your father
20. John couldn't find\_\_\_\_\_ one who knew English.
- a. no                      b. any                      c. none                      d. some

1d	2d	3b	4b	5a	6b	7b	8b	9d	10b
11c	12a	13c	14a	15b	16c	17a	18c	19b	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 19</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>ADVERBS</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. He doesn't get up early on Sundays. He gets up\_\_\_\_\_
- a. late                      b. lately                      c. slowly                      d. hardly
2. The write can't see aunt Licy\_\_\_\_\_ He's having breakfast.
- a. still                      b. now                      c. often                      d. always
3. He was a friendly waiter. He spoke to the writer\_\_\_\_\_
- a. friendly                      b. as friends                      c. like friends                      d. in a friendly ways
4. He spent the whole day in his room. He was in his room \_\_\_\_\_
- a. the whole                      b. the all                      c. all day                      d. all of
5. Bill is a harder worker. He works\_\_\_\_\_ than Joe.
- a. harder                      b. more hard                      c. more hardly                      d. hardier
6. Every year the writer\_\_\_\_\_ enters for the garden competition.
- a. every                      b. also                      c. and                      d. to
7. The writer had\_\_\_\_\_ reached the town when the young man spoke.
- a. often                      b. almost                      c. sometimes                      d. just as
8. She couldn't find her bag. It wasn't \_\_\_\_\_

- a. their                      b. theirs                      c. they're                      d. there
9. Do you still want them? Do you \_\_\_\_\_ want them?  
a. yet                      b. even                      c. now                      d. more
10. Both girls write to each other regularly. They write \_\_\_\_\_  
a. frequently                      b. occasionally                      c. sometimes                      d. now again
11. They will travel faster. They will travel \_\_\_\_\_  
a. sooner                      b. more quickly                      c. hurriedly                      d. shorter
12. Why did they kick the ball so \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. hardly                      b. hard                      c. hardy                      d. hardly
13. That was all she remembered. She couldn't remember \_\_\_\_\_  
a. some more                      b. any more                      c. no more                      d. none more
14. Ted has been worried all week and he's \_\_\_\_\_ worried.  
a. even                      b. still                      c. yet                      d. any more
15. The car was easy to recognize so it wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ difficult for the police to catch the thieves.  
a. much                      b. very                      c. many                      d. too
16. He got such a fright. He was \_\_\_\_\_ frightened.  
a. so                      b. such                      c. such as                      d. a so
17. It was more than he could bear. he couldn't bear it \_\_\_\_\_  
a. more                      b. longer                      c. any longer                      d. no more
18. He had hardly had time to settle down \_\_\_\_\_ he had settled down.  
a. no sooner                      b. as soon as                      c. scarcely                      d. hardly
19. We were very much surprised. We were \_\_\_\_\_ surprised.  
a. more                      b. many                      c. most                      d. the most
20. He brought almost everything in the window. He brought \_\_\_\_\_  
a. nearly                      b. scarcely                      c. hardly                      d. already

1a	2b	3d	4c	5a	6b	7b	8d	9b	10a
11b	12b	13b	14b	15d	16a	17c	18b	19c	20a

## Exercise 2

1. Disguises can be too perfect. This means they can be \_\_\_\_\_  
a. perfect                      b. quite perfect                      c. more perfect than is necessary  
d. almost perfect
2. It was too small. It wasn't \_\_\_\_\_  
a. enough big                      b. big enough                      c. fairly big                      d. rather big
3. It was not long before a helicopter arrived. It arrived \_\_\_\_\_  
a. after                      b. soon afterwards                      c. behind                      d. much later
4. They haven't decided yet. They are \_\_\_\_\_ undecided  
a. even                      b. yet                      c. more                      d. still
5. Everybody around him was smoking; \_\_\_\_\_ smoking.  
a. they was all                      b. they all was                      c. they were all                      d. all of them was
6. I used to travel a great deal. I used travel \_\_\_\_\_  
a. every many                      b. a great number                      c. very much                      d. how much
7. He was rather elderly. He was \_\_\_\_\_  
a. very old                      b. quite old                      c. too old                      d. old enough
8. It has slowed down considerably. It had slowed down \_\_\_\_\_  
a. much                      b. many                      c. very                      d. a lot

9. \_\_\_\_\_ Mendoza met Humphries, he lost again.  
 a. on a second occasion                      b. for the second time  
 c. at a later date                              d. the next time
10. She went \_\_\_\_\_ to fetch the porter.  
 a. down to the basement                      b. below to his basement  
 c. from his basement                          d. along to the basement
11. \_\_\_\_\_ every industry in our modern world requires the work engineers.  
 a. Wholly                      b. Hardly                      c. Only                      d. Virtually
12. He used to live five kilometers from school and ride a bicycle to school everyday. Last month his family moved to the school neighbourhood. He now walks to school. He \_\_\_\_\_ rides a bicycle to school.  
 a. still                      b. no longer                      c. not yet                      d. not again
13. \_\_\_\_\_ of the two boys went on a picnic yesterday. They \_\_\_\_\_ stayed home and watched the Olympic games on TV.  
 a. Both/ either                      b. Neither/both                      c. Both/ neither                      d. Neither/ either
14. Indicate the two same sentences.  
 a. He works hard in the factory                      b. He works hardly in the factory  
 c. He is at hard work in the factory                      d. a and c
15. Mary sang \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. goodly                      b. good                      c. beautiful                      d. beautifully
16. A terrible fire spread \_\_\_\_\_ through the old house.  
 a. quick                      b. more quick                      c. rapid                      d. rapidly
17. A small child cried \_\_\_\_\_ in the third row of the theatre.  
 a. noisily                      b. noisy                      c. noisier                      d. noisiest
18. He responded to my question \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. in polite                      b. polite                      c. politely                      d. impolite
19. A breeze \_\_\_\_\_ touched my face.  
 a. gentle                      b. gently                      c. gentler                      d. in gently
20. Mr. Brown comes to the store \_\_\_\_\_ for cheese and bread.  
 a. regular                      b. regulation                      c. regulating                      d. regularly

1c	2b	3b	4d	5c	6c	7b	8d	9d	10a
11a	12b	13b	14d	15d	16d	17a	18c	19b	20d

Name:	<b>Basis No 16 ARTICLES</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

### Exercise 1

1. The young man and the young woman paid \_\_\_\_\_ attention to the writer.  
 a. none                      b. any                      c. not any                      d. no
2. Mr. Scott has a garage in Silbury. His \_\_\_\_\_ garage is in Pinhurst.  
 a. another                      b. other                      c. else                      d. different
3. Bill Frith's garden is larger than Joe's. It is \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. larger garden                      b. a large garden                      c. large garden                      d. largest garden
4. Joe's garden is more interesting \_\_\_\_\_ Bill's

- a. by                      b. for                      c. than                      d. from
5. Joe's garden is the best in the town. It's the best\_\_\_\_\_ them all.  
a. in                      b. of                      c. than                      d. from
6. Joe's garden is interesting. Joe is \_\_\_\_\_ in gardening.  
a. interesting                      b. interest                      c. interestingly                      d. interested
7. The writer doesn't like hard work. It's\_\_\_\_\_ to look after a garden.  
a. a hard work                      b. a hard job                      c. hard job                      d. hardly a job
8. Harry sat at the same table. He didn't sit at \_\_\_\_\_ one.  
a. other                      b. a different                      c. extra                      d. another
9. We shall have plenty of time. There will be\_\_\_\_\_ time to see him.  
a. enough                      b. almost enough                      c. less than enough                      d. hardly enough
10. Most of the young people will be there. \_\_\_\_\_ the young people will be there.  
a. A lot                      b. Nearly all                      c. Some                      d. Many
11. I speak a few words of French. I don't know\_\_\_\_\_ French  
a. many                      b. much                      c. plenty of                      d. a little
12. The firm couldn't pay\_\_\_\_\_ large salaries.  
a. so                      b. such a                      c. such                      d. a such
13. \_\_\_\_\_ turn is it? It's your turn.  
a. Which                      b. To whom                      c. Whom                      d. Whose
14. I might as well have them. I am\_\_\_\_\_ to have them.  
a. very pleased                      b. very glad                      c. not very glad                      d. delighted
15. I am even less lucky. I am\_\_\_\_\_ lucky.  
a. more                      b. as                      c. not                      d. so
16. His bag is empty. He has\_\_\_\_\_  
a. a empty bag                      b. and empty bag                      c. empty bag                      d. one empty bag
17. I am one of the few people left. So there\_\_\_\_\_  
a. are none left                      b. is one left                      c. are some left                      d. are lot left
18. She received a letter from a girl of her own age. The girl is\_\_\_\_\_ she is.  
a. the same age with                      b. the same age                      c. as old                      d. the same age as
19. I like my sister's house. It's a \_\_\_\_\_  
a. new beautiful house                      b. beautiful house new  
c. beautiful new house                      d. the same age as
20. She will come to England \_\_\_\_\_ year.  
a. last                      b. next                      c. the other                      d. the last

1d	2a	3b	4c	5b	6d	7b	8b	9a	10b
11b	12c	13d	14c	15c	16b	17c	18d	19a	20b

## Exercise 2

1. \_\_\_\_\_ room was it? This gentlemen's  
a. To whom                      b. Who                      c. Whose                      d. Of whom
2. We like them\_\_\_\_\_ we like pretty curtain material.  
a. just as                      b. the same                      c. just the same                      d. so
3. It is one of the ugliest faces I have ever seen. I've never seen\_\_\_\_\_  
a. an ugly one                      b. an ugliest one                      c. the ugliest one                      d. an uglier one
4. This is the most surprising thing about it. It is\_\_\_\_\_ than anything.  
a. most surprising                      b. more surprising                      c. more surprised                      d. most surprised

5. He used to work fourteen hours a day. He did this\_\_\_\_\_ day.  
a. one                      b. some                      c. each                      d. a
6. He had a shop of his own. It was\_\_\_\_\_ shop.  
a. his own                      b. his's                      c. his'own                      d. whose is
7. \_\_\_\_\_ this bicycle? Their son's  
a. who's is                      b. whoses                      c. who's                      d. whose is
8. people are no so honest as they once were. They are\_\_\_\_\_ honest.  
a. as                      b. so                      c. less                      d. fewer
9. There were fewer people in the shop than usual. There were\_\_\_\_\_  
a. as many as usual                      b. not as many as usual  
c. a few as usual                      d. more than usual
10. The woman bought a few small articles. She bought\_\_\_\_\_  
a. a little                      b. some                      c. one                      d. three
11. How\_\_\_\_\_ was the shore? Eight miles.  
a. away far                      b. far from                      c. far away                      d. long
12. They got such a fright. They were\_\_\_\_\_  
a. so frightful                      b. such frightened                      c. so frightened                      d. such fright
13. She was a young woman. The woman was\_\_\_\_\_  
a. a youth                      b. young                      c. a young                      d. youth
14. The operation roved to be every difficult. It proved to be\_\_\_\_\_ operation.  
a. difficult                      b. the difficult                      c. a difficult                      d. difficult the
15. A great many good were sent. There were\_\_\_\_\_  
a. quite a few                      b. quite a little                      c. not too many                      d. very much
16. It has a head like a horse\_\_\_\_\_ head was like that of a horse.  
a. It                      b. It's                      c. It's                      d. Its
17. The strike will last for a week. That's what\_\_\_\_\_ people believe.  
a. most of                      b. the most of                      c. the more                      d. most
18. We went so unwillingly to school. We were \_\_\_\_\_ unwilling pupils.  
a. such                      b. so                      c. so much                      d. such an
19. People will do anything to see a free show-even if it is\_\_\_\_\_  
a. badly                      b. bad one                      c. a bad                      d. bad
20. He hardly used\_\_\_\_\_ large car that he owned.  
a. his                      b. a                      c. the                      d. any

1c	2a	3d	4b	5c	6a	7d	8c	9b	10b
11d	12c	13b	14c	15a	16d	17d	18a	19d	20c

### Exercise 3

1. They did not find\_\_\_\_\_  
a. nothing of value                      b. a valuable thing                      c. any value                      d. anything valuable
2. They stagger home loaded with\_\_\_\_\_ necessities as they can carry.  
a. as many of the                      b. as many                      c. so many                      d. the most
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the Gouffre Berger near Grenoble.  
a. deepest cave known in the world                      b. cave deepest known in the world  
c. world's cave known deepest.                      d. deepest cave in the world's knowledge
4. The bigger the risk an insurance company takes, the higher the premium you will have to pay.  
a. The higher you will have                      b. the more you will have

- c. ore you will have d. you will have higher.
5. Modern dances proved to be \_\_\_\_\_ the dish could bear.  
a. too much for b. as much as c. so much that d. so much for
6. The public are often far more interested\_\_\_\_\_ political events.  
a. in people's stories than b. in stories about people than  
c. with stores about people then d. by people's stories than by
7. We are\_\_\_\_\_ dependent on specialized labour as we used to be.  
a. increasingly less b. becoming not so c. not nearly as d. becoming less
8. \_\_\_\_\_ spend hours of their leisure time.  
a. men of each age b. men of every age  
c. all ages of men d. whatever a man's age, they
9. Whatever it is, a fused light, \_\_\_\_\_ furniture, a clogged pipe, a broken down vacuum cleaner,  
wives expect their husbands to put things right.  
a. shaked b. shaken c. a shaky d. shaky
10. Drilling a hole under the sea has proved more difficult than\_\_\_\_\_  
a. drilling one on lad b. under the land c. to drill a hole on land d. a hole on the land
11. The bottle hasa\_\_\_\_\_  
a. green delicately shaded tint b. delicately shaded green tint  
c. green tinted delicate shade d. delicate shade of green tint.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ belongings people accumulate.  
a. as they get older more b. In getting older there are more  
c. only when they get older, do more d. the older they get the more
13. I like him very much, he is\_\_\_\_\_  
a. quite an intelligent boy b. quite intelligent boy  
c. a quite intelligent boy d. a boy quite intelligent
14. Nowadays\_\_\_\_\_ women get university degrees.  
a. either b. every c. both d. many
15. Nam's parents are\_\_\_\_\_ with his success.  
a. please b. pleasant c. pleasing d. pleased
16. It is an \_\_\_\_\_ story.  
a. interesting b. interested c. interest d. all are correct
17. My daughter can make only few sandwiches with\_\_\_\_\_ flour left in that paper bag.  
a. so much b. so may c. so few d. the little
18. Those are\_\_\_\_\_ books we still have this library.  
a. few b. the few c. a few d. the little
19. Many other\_\_\_\_\_ afraid of walking in the darkness.  
a. girls are b. girl are c. girls is d. girl is
20. Some people can stand\_\_\_\_\_ criticism, others can't stand\_\_\_\_\_  
a. much/ any b. much/ a few c. a little/ some d. little/ few



- a. escaped                      b. escaping                      c. having escaped                      d. escape
3. A man who has wide knowledge is called a (n) \_\_\_\_\_ man.  
a. inform-well                      b. informed-well                      c. informing-well                      d. well-informed
4. My dress is quite yours.  
a. differ from                      b. different to                      c. differ to                      d. different from
5. The students don't review \_\_\_\_\_ English lessons.  
a. them                      b. their                      c. their                      d. none is correct
6. We still have \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
a. many                      b. few                      c. some                      d. none
7. Everyone should do \_\_\_\_\_ duty (British English)  
a. their                      b. her                      c. his                      d. one's
8. I can write this report with \_\_\_\_\_ pencil.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article is needed
9. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ books?  
a. little                      b. much                      c. some                      d. any
10. We want our country to be free and \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. independent                      b. independence                      c. independent                      d. independently
11. He is \_\_\_\_\_ of three.  
a. best                      b. good                      c. better                      d. the best
12. I can't speak \_\_\_\_\_ English.  
a. many                      b. much                      c. very                      d. the best
13. \_\_\_\_\_ games that we like best are \_\_\_\_\_ tennis and football  
a. The/ the                      b. The/ no article                      c. No article/ the                      d. No article/ no article
14. You can write this essay in \_\_\_\_\_ ink or with \_\_\_\_\_ pencil.  
a. The/ the                      b. no article/ the                      c. the/ no article                      d. no article/ no article
15. The church has \_\_\_\_\_ pictures.  
a. some French old                      b. some old French                      c. old French some                      d. French old some
16. The library has several \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. very English easy books                      b. very easy English books  
c. English very easy books                      d. easy very English books
17. A man with one leg is called \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. a one leg man                      b. a one-legged man                      c. a one-legged man                      d. one-leg man
18. Give me \_\_\_\_\_ information, please.  
a. father                      b. further                      c. little                      d. many
19. My mother gave me too \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
a. many a                      b. much more                      c. little                      d. many
20. Very \_\_\_\_\_ people understand what he said.  
a. some                      b. little                      c. few                      d. less

1b	2a	3d	4d	5c	6c	7a	8a	9d	10a
11d	12b	13b	14b	15b	16b	17c	18b	19c	20c

### Exercise 5

1. I have \_\_\_\_\_ books of my own.  
a. no                      b. not                      c. any                      d. much
2. He is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. a three years old boy                      b. a three year old boy



- a. Less of the                      b. A few of                      c. A few more                      d. There were a few
3. You don't hear\_\_\_\_\_ news about Mr. Allen these days.  
a. many                      b. much                      c. a lot                      d. much of
4. "Are you going to hunt this year?"  
"I don't know. There are\_\_\_\_\_ deer in this area".  
a. so few                      b. so little                      c. no a lot of                      d. only a few of
5. "Are you sure you don't want to go to the movies tonight?".  
"I can't. I have\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. too many homeworks                      b. much too much homework  
c. much too many homework                      d. too much homework assignments
6. "How was our trip to Fort Knox, Kentucky?"  
"I've never seen\_\_\_\_\_ bars in one place".  
a. so much gold                      b. so many gold                      c. more than a little                      d. as much of gold
7. I'm sorry I'm late. I hope I didn't cause you\_\_\_\_\_  
a. too much problems b. problem                      c. many more trouble d. too much trouble
8. "The price of chocolate has really gone up".  
"Yes, they give you\_\_\_\_\_ for your money now".  
a. so few                      b. so less                      c. so little                      d. fewer
9. "\_\_\_\_\_ do you think we need?"  
"Oh, about a gallon".  
a. How much paint                      b. How much of paint  
c. How much paint                      d. How many paints
10. "I'm looking for something to eat".  
"There's \_\_\_\_\_ meat in the refrigerator".  
a. a little of                      b. a little                      c. a few                      d. some few meat
11. I've never seen\_\_\_\_\_ people in one place.  
a. so much                      b. so many                      c. so much of                      d. this many of
12. "What would you like to drink?"  
"I'll have\_\_\_\_\_, please".  
a. a coffee cup                      b. small coffee                      c. a little coffee                      d. a cup coffee
13. "Henry wasn't able to give us\_\_\_\_\_ information".  
"That's too bad. We really needed it".  
a. much                      b. any of                      c. many                      d. a lot
14. \_\_\_\_\_ fish are there in that bowl"  
a. How much number of                      b. How many  
c. Do you know how much                      d. What is the number of
15. \_\_\_\_\_ do we need for the winter?  
a. How many woods                      b. How many wood  
c. How much of wood                      d. How much wood
16. We have heard\_\_\_\_\_ about you.  
a. so many news                      b. so much news                      c. a lot news                      d. few news
17. We have\_\_\_\_\_ this year than last year.  
a. fewer cows                      b. smaller cows                      c. much cows                      d. many cows
18. Some people are panning to vote, but\_\_\_\_\_ are staying home.  
a. much of them                      b. more of them                      c. little of them                      d. many of them
19. A teacher's equipment usually includes\_\_\_\_\_  
a. a few pieces of chalk                      b. a few chalks

c. a little number of chalk

d. a small number of chalk

20. There is \_\_\_\_\_ ink in the pot.

a. few

b. small

c. little

d. a lot

1d	2c	3b	4a	5b	6b	7d	8c	9c	10b
11b	12c	13a	14b	15d	16b	17a	18d	19a	20c

Name:	<b>Basis No 21</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>SUBJUNCTIVE</b>	

### Exercise 1

- I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ to retake my exams.  
a. do not have      b. will not have      c. am about      d. did not have
- The spacemen felt as if he \_\_\_\_\_ in a paradise.  
a. had been      b. falls      c. fall      d. has fallen
- He afflicted mother felt as though she \_\_\_\_\_ on the verge of dying  
a. has been      b. had been      c. were      d. was
- I wish another more effective teaching method \_\_\_\_\_ used.  
a. is      b. was      c. were      d. has been
- She wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ a fairy now.  
a. was      b. were      c. is      d. were
- She spent money as if she always \_\_\_\_\_ plenty of it.  
a. have      b. had      c. had had      d. should have
- She spends money as if she always \_\_\_\_\_ plenty of it.  
a. has      b. have      c. has had      d. had
- She talks too much but I wish she \_\_\_\_\_  
a. didn't      b. doesn't      c. won't      d. wouldn't
- They will drink wine but I wish they \_\_\_\_\_  
a. didn't      b. don't      c. won't      d. wouldn't
- She made lot of mistakes but I wish she \_\_\_\_\_  
a. didn't      b. hadn't      c. wouldn't      d. did
- My wife wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ the guitar now  
a. could play      b. can play      c. could have played      d. plays
- Yesterday he missed the lesson. He wishes he \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. didn't miss      b. hadn't miss      c. hasn't missed      d. hadn't missed
- I suggest that the doctor \_\_\_\_\_ up his mind without delay.  
a. makes      b. make      c. made      d. is to make
- This poor old man wishes he \_\_\_\_\_  
a. wasn't born      b. has never been born  
c. had never been born      d. would never be born
- I am not a teacher of English, but suppose I \_\_\_\_\_, then I \_\_\_\_\_ ser up language centre.  
a. am/ can      b. were/ can      c. was could      d. were/could
- His friends suggest that the \_\_\_\_\_ for that post.  
a. applies      b. apply      c. applying      d. will apply
- It's high time we \_\_\_\_\_ these mice.  
a. are getting rid of      b. are going to get rid of      c. get rid of      d. got rid of

18. It is necessary that children\_\_\_\_\_ of their old parents.  
a. to take care              b. takes care              c. took care              d. take are
19. I wish this English course\_\_\_\_\_ the whole year.  
a. will last              b. may last              c. lasted              d. last
20. It is essential that the sponsor\_\_\_\_\_ the file early.  
a. make              b. makes              c. made              d. making

1d	2a	3b	4c	5b	6c	7d	8a	9d	10b
11a	12d	13b	14c	15d	16b	17d	18d	19c	20a

## Exercise 2

1. The clients demanded that the doctor's office\_\_\_\_\_ earlier.  
a. opening              b. opened              c. open              d. to open
2. He was not a dutiful son. I wish he\_\_\_\_\_  
a. was              b. were              c. has been              d. had been
3. It is cold now. The homeless child wishes he\_\_\_\_\_ in a cosy family  
a. has been              b. will be              c. were              d. is
4. What would you suggest that he\_\_\_\_\_?  
a. will do              b. would do              c. do              d. did
5. I wish my wife\_\_\_\_\_ better now.  
a. would be              b. was              c. be              d. were
6. He wishes he\_\_\_\_\_ the college that year.  
a. entered              b. had entered              c. would enter              d. has been entering
7. It is necessary that he\_\_\_\_\_ a certificate in English?  
a. will get              b. gets              c. get              d. would get
8. I demand that I\_\_\_\_\_ to retake the exam.  
a. be allowed              b. am allowed              c. will be allowed              d. were allowed
9. I am not a interpreter, but I certainly wish I \_\_\_\_\_  
a. shall be              b. was              c. were              d. am
10. I wish you\_\_\_\_\_ quiet a moment, I can't hear what\_\_\_\_\_  
a. would keep/ the compere is saying              b. kept/ the compere said  
c. will keep/ the compere saying              d. had kept / had the compere said
11. We will answer you in writing, If needs\_\_\_\_\_  
a. is              b. will be              c. would be              d. be
12. Do not play in the sunshine unless you \_\_\_\_\_ sunstroke.  
a. will get              b. get              c. are going to get              d. shout get
13. It is our wish that she\_\_\_\_\_ in her life.  
a. succeeds              b. succeed              c. succeeded              d. will succeed
14. It was a lovely day; we wish we\_\_\_\_\_ at Long Hai beach.  
a. have been              b. were              c. are              d. had been
15. The king ordered that Gulliver\_\_\_\_\_ ser free  
a. be              b. is              c. will be              d. would be
16. It is essential that Mary\_\_\_\_\_ speak English.  
a. be able to              b. is able to              c. was able to              d. must be able to
17. He suggested that I\_\_\_\_\_ tolerant of other people.  
a. am              b. was              c. be              d. would be
18. My doctor insisted\_\_\_\_\_

- a. that I diet                      b. me to diet                      c. for me dieting                      d. for me to diet
19. Everyone urged that Bill\_\_\_\_\_ his education.  
a. continue                      b. continuing                      c. to continue                      d. continued
20. The director requests that all packages\_\_\_\_\_ at the central office.  
a. to mail                      b. be mailed                      c. to be mailed                      d. mailing

1c	2d	3c	4c	5d	6b	7c	8a	9c	10b
11d	12d	13b	14d	15a	16a	17c	18a	19a	20b

### Exercise 3

- It is necessary that she\_\_\_\_\_ now.  
a. gone                      b. goes                      c. go                      d. went
- It is important that your sister\_\_\_\_\_ information technology.  
a. chooses                      b. choose                      c. chose                      d. chose
- It is imperative that you\_\_\_\_\_ careful on construction site.  
a. to be                      b. were                      c. are                      d. be
- It is advisable that she\_\_\_\_\_ care of he mother.  
a. to take                      b. takes                      c. take                      d. took
- The teacher ordered that the students\_\_\_\_\_ talking.  
a. stop                      b. should stop                      c. stopped                      d. a or b
- I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ David Beckham.  
a. am                      b. is                      c. was                      d. were
- I wish you\_\_\_\_\_ here yesterday.  
a. were                      b. had been                      c. to be                      d. were
- I wish the rain\_\_\_\_\_ soon.  
a. stop                      b. stops                      c. stopped                      d. would stop
- I wish I \_\_\_\_\_how to control the tsunami.  
a. know                      b. knew                      c. to know                      d. to have known
- She insisted that we \_\_\_\_\_ our holiday in Dalat.  
a. sped                      b. spent                      c. should spend                      d. a or b
- May you\_\_\_\_\_ happy all your life!  
a. are                      b. were                      c. be                      d. to be
- It is our wish that you\_\_\_\_\_ enough rains to love the sun shines.  
a. having                      b. had                      c. have                      d. to have
- "Should I begin typing these letters?" "I suggest\_\_\_\_\_ bookkeeping first".  
a. you finished                      b. you to finish                      c. you finish                      d. you will finish
- "Did your grandmother give you that watch?"  
"Yes, she insisted\_\_\_\_\_ it".  
a. that I took                      b. I will take                      c. on my taking                      d. for me to take
- "Have you received the shipment of bicycles yet?".  
"No, but it's possible that it\_\_\_\_\_ in a few days"  
a. will come                      b. comes                      c. come                      d. has come
- "Marrie practices the piano so early in the morning".  
"We asked\_\_\_\_\_, but she won't".  
a. that she stops                      b. her to stop                      c. her stopping                      d. for her stop
- "The weather seems very dry here".  
"Seldom\_\_\_\_\_ in this area".

- a. it rains                      b. does it rain                      c. rains it                      d. it does rain
18. Only in the last few years\_\_\_\_\_ to use home computers.  
a. have begun people   b. when people began   c. have people begun   d. people have begun
19. "What did the teacher tell you?".  
"She recommended\_\_\_\_\_ with an American family"  
a. that I live                      b. I living                      c. me to live                      d. living for me
20. "What time should Eric start to work?"  
"I suggest\_\_\_\_\_ here about 7L30"  
a. that he be                      b. that he will be                      c. him to be                      d. him being

1c	2b	3d	4c	5d	6d	7b	8d	9b	10d
11c	12c	13c	14c	15a	16c	17b	18c	19a	20a

Name:	<b>Basis No 22 INTERROGATIVE WORDS</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

### Exercise 1

- \_\_\_\_\_did the writer feel? Angry.  
a. Where                      b. Why                      c. How                      d. When
- \_\_\_\_\_ did aunt Lucy come? By train.  
a. When                      b. How                      c. Why                      d. Where
- \_\_\_\_\_ him a few words of Italian? The waiter.  
a. Who taught                      b. What did he teach   c. Who did teach                      d. Whom did he teach
- What's the distance from Pinhurst to Silbury? How is Pinhurst \_\_\_\_\_ Silbury?  
a. long ago/ until                      b. away/ till                      c. long/away                      d. far/from
- \_\_\_\_\_ does he call? Once a month.  
a. How seldom                      b. How long                      c. How soon                      d. How often
- \_\_\_\_\_ were detectives waiting? At the airport.  
a. Why                      b. When                      c. Where                      d. What
- \_\_\_\_\_ were they expecting? A valuable parcel of diamonds.  
a. Why                      b. When                      c. Where                      d. What
- \_\_\_\_\_ will it strike? In twenty minutes' time.  
a. When                      b. How long                      c. How long ago                      d. How much
- \_\_\_\_\_ did he ask for? 2  
a. How many                      b. How                      c. How much                      d. How few
- How\_\_\_\_\_ staying? For five days.  
a. long they will be                      b. they will be                      c. long will they be                      d. long they be
- \_\_\_\_\_ did he feel! Very nervous.  
a. What                      b. How                      c. How much                      d. Which
- \_\_\_\_\_ is she? At least thirty-five years old.  
a. How                      b. How big                      c. How much                      d. How
- \_\_\_\_\_was the bicycle picked up? Several times.  
a. How many times                      b. How many                      c. How much                      d. How
- \_\_\_\_\_ was the bicycle picked up? In a small village.  
a. Where                      b. Why                      c. What                      d. When
- \_\_\_\_\_does she intend take short rests? Every two hours.

- a. Since when      b. How long      d. How much      d. How often
16. \_\_\_\_\_? A bedside telephone.  
a. For what did he ask      b. What did he ask  
c. For what did he ask for      d. What did he ask for
17. \_\_\_\_\_ do you find it? Beautiful.  
a. What      b. How      c. How much      d. Where
18. \_\_\_\_\_ had it been wrapped up in? A newspaper.  
a. Where      b. Who      c. How      d. What
19. \_\_\_\_\_ a ticket so Sydney? 230.  
a. How many is      b. How much is      c. How much has      d. How much costs
20. \_\_\_\_\_ did he travel? 1,600 miles.  
a. How long      b. How long ago      c. How much further      d. How far

1c	2b	3a	4d	5d	6c	7d	8b	9a	10c
11b	12d	13a	14a	15d	16d	17b	18d	19b	20d

## Exercise 2

1. Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. the crop is processed      b. is the crop processed  
c. is processed the crop      d. processed is the crop
2. What did the woman die of? \_\_\_\_\_ did the woman die?  
a. How      b. Where      c. What      d. When
3. On arriving in England; \_\_\_\_\_ they arrived in England.  
a. on      b. why      c. when      d. where
4. How \_\_\_\_\_? No one knows.  
a. long it will last      b. long will it last      c. it will last      d. it lasts
5. \_\_\_\_\_ did he wave to? his companion.  
a. Who      b. Whose      c. Which      d. What
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is the pool? Seven feet.  
a. How deeply      b. How tall      c. How high      d. What depth
7. \_\_\_\_\_ a year is the Festival held? Only once a year.  
a. How much      b. How many      c. How many times      d. Which times
8. But \_\_\_\_\_ of us can honestly say so?  
a. who      b. which ones      c. how many      d. what on
9. \_\_\_\_\_ do you prefer, English or French?  
a. What      b. How      c. Which      d. Whichever
10. Did you visit her last night?  
a. No, I didn't      b. No, I haven't      c. No, I hadn't      d. No, I did
11. How \_\_\_\_\_ people took part in the conference last month.  
a. many      b. little      c. few      d. many of
12. \_\_\_\_\_ were you born?  
a. What month      b. On what month      c. In what month      d. Which month
13. \_\_\_\_\_ is your mother? My mother is a worker.  
a. What      b. Which      c. Who      d. Whose
14. \_\_\_\_\_ is your mother's name?  
a. Which      b. Whose      c. What      d. Who
15. \_\_\_\_\_ girl won the beauty competition?



- a. What                      b. Which                      c. Whom                      d. Who
16. Would you like some coffee now?  
a. Yes, I would              b. Yes, please              c. Yes, I like              d. Yes, I'd like
17. Would you like to come to a dance?  
a. Yes, I would              b. Yes, please              c. Yes I like              d. Yes, I'd like to
18. \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to the zoo? Tomorrow.  
a. Why                      b. What                      c. When                      d. Who
19. \_\_\_\_\_ down town later today? Yes.  
a. Are you going                                      b. Why are you going  
c. How are you going                                d. What time are you going
20. \_\_\_\_\_ has Pierre been living her? Since last September.  
a. How much              b. How long              c. How far              d. How many

1b	2a	3c	4b	5a	6d	7c	8c	9c	10a
11a	12c	13a	14c	15b	16b	17d	18c	19a	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 23</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. "I don't think John looks well".  
"He seems\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. fairly tired              b. fair tired              c. fair tiredly              d. fairly tiredly
2. "Which do you prefer - the blue china or the white china?"  
"The white china is\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. definite better              b. better definite              c. better definitely              d. definitely better
3. "Were you pleased with the translation?"  
"Yes, the job was\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. amazing satisfactory                              b. amazingly satisfactory  
c. amazing satisfactorily                            d. satisfactory amazing
4. "What was you impression of last night's lecture?"  
"\_\_\_\_\_ speaking, I thought it was rather boring".  
a. Honest                      b. Honestly                      c. Very                      d. Really
5. "How tall is Ralph?"  
"He's \_\_\_\_\_ than you are".  
a. slight tall                      b. slight taller                      c. slightly tall                      d. slightly taller
6. "How does Amy like her new school?"  
"Fine. And she's doing\_\_\_\_\_ in her courses"  
a. extreme good              b. extremely well              c. extremely good              d. extreme well
7. "What a nice fire you have in your fireplace"  
"During the winter I like my house\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. warmly and comfortable                              b. warm and comfortable  
c. warm and comfortably                                d. warmly and comfortable
8. "This perfume is very expensive".  
"Yes, but it smells\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. exceptional good                                      b. exceptionally good

- |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1a  | 2d  | 3b  | 4b  | 5d  | 6b  | 7b  | 8b  | 9a  | 10c |
| 11c | 12b | 13d | 14a | 15b | 16a | 17c | 18a | 19a | 20d |

1. The teacher affirmed that these students \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.  
a. have passed      b. did pass      c. pass      d. passing
2. The despair\_\_\_\_\_ him in a very short time.  
a. is weakened      b. weakening      c. did weaken      d. weaken
3. \_\_\_\_\_ in a mosquito-net.  
a. Sleep      b. Do sleep      c. Sleeping      d. To sleep
4. Smoking\_\_\_\_\_ the health of the smokers.  
a. damaging      b. damage      d. did damage      d. does damage
5. The president\_\_\_\_\_ will investigate the case tomorrow.  
a. himself      b. itself      c. oneself      d. by himself
6. She\_\_\_\_\_ here yesterday. I am sure of that.  
a. does come      b. came      c. did come      d. would come
7. These school children\_\_\_\_\_ what they had to do.  
a. knew      b. do know      c. did know      d. knows
8. Never\_\_\_\_\_ that poem  
a. do I have read      b. I read      c. have I read      d. I have read
9. No sooner\_\_\_\_\_ than he begins to cry.  
a. was a human being born      b. has a human being born  
c. is a human being born      d. a human being was born
10. Seldom\_\_\_\_\_ allowed to do that.  
a. I am      b. am I      c. I have been      d. I can be
11. After each chapter in this book\_\_\_\_\_ found the pages where reference material may be included.  
a. are      b. is      c. has      d. have
12. The new school principal\_\_\_\_\_ my uncle's name. The emphatic sentence is\_\_\_\_\_  
a. knew      b. do know      c. does know      d. knows
13. Never before \_\_\_\_\_ such a demonstration  
a. they witness      b. they have witnessed  
c. had they witnessed      d. they had witnessed
14. Only by in haling ether himself\_\_\_\_\_ its effect on human being.  
a. he could ascertain      b. he did ascertain      c. he ascertained      d. could he ascertain
15. The fairy\_\_\_\_\_ a jade bowl into the sea.  
a. does drop      b. do drop      c. drop      d. did drop
16. The long ridge of cliffs\_\_\_\_\_ a dragon's crest.  
a. does resemble      b. do resemble      c. resemble      d. is resemble
17. \_\_\_\_\_ us draw in that net, please.  
a. Does help      b. Do helps      c. Do help      d. Did helped
18. It\_\_\_\_\_ only when the game was over that he felt "a little frost bite"  
a. is      b. was      c. be      d. being
19. It is in this room\_\_\_\_\_ we usually hold our meetings.  
a. that      b. which      c. where      d. when
20. Wasn't it her family\_\_\_\_\_ emigrated to Australia?  
a. whom      b. who      c. who      d. which

1b	2c	3b	4d	5a	6c	7c	8c	9c	10b
11a	12c	13c	14d	15d	16a	17c	18b	19a	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 25</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>SUBJECT AND VERB AGREEMENT</b>	

### Exercise 1

- Tom with dog\_\_\_\_\_ here now.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. was                      d. were
- Tom as well as his dog\_\_\_\_\_ here now.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. was                      d. were
- My old friends and colleague, John, \_\_\_\_\_ married.  
a. has just got              b. have just got              c. just has got              d. just have got
- The singer and actor\_\_\_\_\_ coming now.  
a. was                      b. were                      c. is                      d. are
- The singer and the actor\_\_\_\_\_ coming now.  
a. was                      b. were                      c. is                      d. are
- Mathematics\_\_\_\_\_ difficult.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. is                      d. are
- Two billion dollars\_\_\_\_\_ not enough for the victims of the tsunami  
a. was                      b. were                      c. is                      d. are
- Three years in a strange land \_\_\_\_\_ like a long time for lonely people.  
a. is seeming              b. are seeing              c. seems                      d. seemed
- The film "Titanic"\_\_\_\_\_ very interesting.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. was                      d. were
- Cattle\_\_\_\_\_ allowed graze here now.  
a. was                      b. were                      c. is                      d. are
- None of this money\_\_\_\_\_ right now.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. was                      d. were
- None of them\_\_\_\_\_ right now.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. was                      d. were
- Every student \_\_\_\_\_ willing to join the picnic now.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. was                      d. were
- The number of students\_\_\_\_\_ in creasing now.  
a. are                      b. was                      c. were                      d. is
- A number of students \_\_\_\_\_ playing table - tennis now.  
a. are                      b. was                      c. were                      d. is
- Physics\_\_\_\_\_ my favourite subject.  
a. are                      b. is                      c. was                      d. have been
- They boy, with his two companions, \_\_\_\_\_ the cherry tree now.  
a. has split              b. have split              c. is slitting              d. are splitting
- The write and poet\_\_\_\_\_ going to preside over this meeting  
a. are                      b. is                      c. have been going              d. is to
- Neither the mother nor the children\_\_\_\_\_ aware of the danger.  
a. were                      b. was                      c. is                      d. has been
- She told me that she \_\_\_\_\_ happy for what he\_\_\_\_\_  
a. is feeling/ did              b. was feeling/ had done  
c. feels/ did                      d. has felt/ has been going

1a	2a	3a	4c	5d	6a	7c	8c	9a	10d
11a	12b	13a	14d	15a	16b	17c	18b	19a	20b

## Exercise 2

1. If anyone\_\_\_\_\_, tell him I'll be back later.  
a. was calling                      b. called                      c. call                      d. calls
2. Each of the boys\_\_\_\_\_ a book now.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. had                      d. are having
3. Two-thirds of the money\_\_\_\_\_ mine now.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. was                      d. were
4. About 60% of students in this class \_\_\_\_\_ from China.  
a. was                      b. were                      c. are                      d. is
5. A number of sheep\_\_\_\_\_ eating grass now.  
a. are                      b. is                      c. was                      d. were
6. The number of books in this library\_\_\_\_\_ large.  
a. are                      b. is                      c. was                      d. were
7. Either you or I \_\_\_\_\_ wrong.  
a. am                      b. is                      c. are                      d. were
8. Neither my gloves nor my hat\_\_\_\_\_ with this dress.  
a. is going                      b. are going                      c. goes                      d. go
9. The poor living her\_\_\_\_\_ help.  
a. is needing                      b. are needing                      c. need                      d. needs
10. Several of the students \_\_\_\_\_ absent yesterday.  
a. has been                      b. had been                      c. were                      d. was
11. The professor said that Vietnam \_\_\_\_\_ to South-East Asia.  
a. has belonged                      b. has belonged                      c. belonged                      d. belongs
12. He\_\_\_\_\_ he had read that story - book before.  
a. told                      b. has told                      c. had told                      d. said
13. His choice of words\_\_\_\_\_ very good.  
a. are                      b. be                      c. is                      d. being
14. Anybody who\_\_\_\_\_ my keys will be given a candy.  
a. find                      b. finds                      c. are finding                      d. found
15. The Browns \_\_\_\_\_ here since 1950.  
a. are living                      b. have lived                      c. have been living                      d. has been living
16. John, as well as I, \_\_\_\_\_ a student.  
a. are                      b. were                      c. as                      d. has been
17. Not only John but his brothers \_\_\_\_\_ also in debt.  
a. is                      b. have                      c. was                      d. were
18. The majority of the TOEFL tests \_\_\_\_\_ difficult.  
a. are                      b. is                      c. be                      d. being
19. Local news \_\_\_\_\_ on TV every night at 5:30  
a. were                      b. was                      c. is                      d. are
20. A number of sheep\_\_\_\_\_ died from a strange illness.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. is                      d. are

1b	2d	3a	4a	5b	6d	7b	8b	9c	10a
11b	12d	13c	14b	15c	16c	17d	18a	19c	20a

### Exercise 3

1. The science classes at this \_\_\_\_\_ difficult.  
a. schools are      b. school is      c. school are      d. school's is
2. One of the \_\_\_\_\_ from Italy.  
a. student is      b. students are      c. student are      d. student is
3. \_\_\_\_\_ to support the case against James?  
a. Is there any proof      b. Are there any proof  
c. Is there any proofs      d. Are there any proofs
4. You have to pay extra if you take too \_\_\_\_\_ with you.  
a. much luggages      b. many luggages      c. much luggage      d. may luggage
5. \_\_\_\_\_ in your lass have tickets for the lecture series?  
a. Do any of the student      b. Does any of the student  
c. Do any of the students      d. Does any of the students
6. Bob got fired. It's going to be difficult for him to find job.  
a. other      b. another      c. the other      d. the another
7. There \_\_\_\_\_ available in his area of specialization.  
a. isn't a lot of job      b. aren't a lot of jobs      c. isn't a lot of jobs      d. aren't a lot of job
8. He made the soup by mixing \_\_\_\_\_ meat with some rice.  
a. little      b. few      c. a little      d. a few
9. Many of the \_\_\_\_\_ not expect to win.  
a. participants in the race do      b. participants in the races does  
c. participants in the race does      d. participant in the race does
10. The English \_\_\_\_\_ strong traditions.  
a. has many      b. have much      c. have many      d. has much
11. \_\_\_\_\_ moved to that city recently.  
a. A number of Vietnamese have      b. A number of Vietnamese has  
c. The number of Vietnamese has      b. The number of Vietnamese have
12. Each of the reference \_\_\_\_\_ available in the school library.  
a. books on that list is      b. books on that list are  
c. books on that list is      d. book on that list are
13. Several \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping under a tree.  
a. of lions were      b. lion was      c. of the lions was      d. lions were
14. Many of the \_\_\_\_\_ not used to day. They are remnants of the past.  
a. railroad tracks around here are      b. railroad's tracks around here is  
c. railroad tracks around here is      d. railroad's tracks around here are
15. As we walked through the jungle, the \_\_\_\_\_ unusually quiet.  
a. monkeys were      b. monkeys was      c. monkies were      d. monkies was
16. At the news conference, several reporters didn't get clear answer to \_\_\_\_\_ questions.  
a. theirs      b. their      c. his and hers      d. his and her
17. I have a \_\_\_\_\_ sister.  
a. seven years old      b. seven years old      c. seven year old      d. seven year olds
18. There \_\_\_\_\_ in the world today.  
a. is any new computer company      b. is many new computer companies  
c. are many new computer companies      d. are many new computer companies
19. Self-esteem is important. It's important for people to like \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. oneself      b. yourself      c. him/herself      d. themselves

20. What\_\_\_\_\_ you used in picking a winner in the art contest?  
 a. is the criteria      b. are the criteria      c. are the criterion      d. are the riterions

1c	2d	3b	4a	5b	6c	7a	8b	9a	10b
11b	12a	13a	14c	15c	16a	17b	18d	19d	20b

#### Exercise 4

- Mathematics\_\_\_\_\_ very interesting to me.  
 a. are      b. have been      c. were      d. is
- Down\_\_\_\_\_ for three days  
 a. the rain poured      b. did the rain pour      c. poured the rain      d. do the rain pour
- Twenty dollars\_\_\_\_\_ the price.  
 a. are      b. is      c. being      d. were
- A number of graduates\_\_\_\_\_ scholarships from this department.  
 a. have received      b. has received      c. are received      d. receives
- Pollution together with water erosion\_\_\_\_\_ its toll on the building.  
 a. are taking      b. is taking      c. have taking      d. have taken
- Most of the rooms in the hotel \_\_\_\_\_ air-conditioning.  
 a. has      b. having      c. have      d. are
- A few\_\_\_\_\_ the test.  
 a. have failed      b. has failed      c. is failing      d. failing
- Under the tree\_\_\_\_\_ full of food.  
 a. a basket was      b. was a basket      c. are a basket      d. were a basket
- Both viruses and genes\_\_\_\_\_ made from nucleoproteins.  
 a. are      b. is      c. were      d. has been
- Coffee contains caffeine, and so\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. tea did      b. does tea      c. it does      d. tea does
- Mary, accompanied by her brother on the piano, \_\_\_\_\_ very well received at the talent show yesterday.  
 a. was      b. were      c. have been      d. has been
- The smallest flying dinosaurs \_\_\_\_\_ about the size of a robin.  
 a. was      b. are      c. have      d. been
- My new pair of pants \_\_\_\_\_ at the cleaners.  
 a. is      b. are      c. be      d. have been
- Out\_\_\_\_\_ the bird from its tiny cage.  
 a. did the bird fly      b. fly the bird      c. did the bird fly      d. flew the bird
- The police\_\_\_\_\_ on the alert for the escaped convict.  
 a. are      b. be      c. can      d. been
- I'm happy that everything\_\_\_\_\_ in its place.  
 a. are      b. been      c. is      d. have
- One of my best friends\_\_\_\_\_ five credit cards.  
 a. have      b. has      c. does      d. do
- \_\_\_\_\_ an emergency arise, call 911.  
 a. Can      b. Does      c. Should      d. Will
- There\_\_\_\_\_ never been an environmental disaster of this magnitude.  
 a. has      b. have      c. are      d. is
- The news\_\_\_\_\_ quite alarming.

a. are

b. have

c. was

d. were

1d	2c	3b	4a	5b	6c	7a	8b	9a	10b
11a	12b	13a	14d	15a	16c	17b	18c	19a	20c

### Exercise 5

- Every\_\_\_\_\_ enjoyed the lesson.  
a. students                      b. student's                      c. student                      d. of students
- We are looking for \_\_\_\_\_ information about apartments for rent.  
a. few                      b. an                      c. a                      d. a few
- Mathematics courses \_\_\_\_\_ generally required in American high schools.  
a. is                      b. was                      c. were                      d. are
- Usually\_\_\_\_\_ begin to take a interest in reading around the age of five.  
a. child                      b. the child                      c. a child                      d. children
- Statistics\_\_\_\_\_ a difficult course for people to understand.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. were                      d. being
- Not even one of the hundred students \_\_\_\_\_ passed the test.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. to have                      d. having
- The number of women\_\_\_\_\_ increased.  
a. has                      b. have                      c. having                      d. to have
- My daughter's instructor\_\_\_\_\_ very competent.  
a. seem                      b. to seem                      c. seeming                      d. seems
- People\_\_\_\_\_ worried about the high rate of unemployment.  
a. be                      b. is                      c. are                      d. being
- The team\_\_\_\_\_ going back to their homes.  
a. is                      b. do                      c. has                      d. are
- Every man a woman\_\_\_\_\_ the right to vote.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. are                      d. is
- The children's bed room\_\_\_\_\_ upstairs on the second floor.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. there are                      d. it is
- "Why did they close the center of the city to automobiles?"  
"Because the number of contaminants in the air\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. was increasing                      b. will increasing                      c. were in an increase                      d. were in creasing
- "The cupboards are really empty".  
"Yes, all the food\_\_\_\_\_ eaten".  
a. have been                      b. is been                      c. has been                      d. been
- The forest trails\_\_\_\_\_ any signs for campers.  
a. doesn't have                      b. aren't                      c. don't have                      d. have
- "Why did you change your major from economics to law?:  
"Because economics\_\_\_\_\_ as interesting to me as law".  
a. isn't                      b. doesn't                      c. are                      d. aren't
- A special license is needed to drive trucks and\_\_\_\_\_  
a. bus                      b. buses                      c. a bus                      d. the buses
- "How much money did you spend?"  
"As much as there\_\_\_\_\_".  
a. were                      b. has                      c. was                      d. have
- "Did you hear about the fire down the street?"



"There\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of news about it on TV last night".

- a. was                      b. had                      c. is                      d. were

20. "Why are you buying all that food?"

- a. are coming              b. coming              c. comes              d. is coming

1c	2a	3d	4d	5a	6b	7a	8d	9c	10d
11b	12a	13a	14c	15c	16a	17b	18.	19.	20.

Name:	<b>Basis No 26</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>MODAL VERBS</b>	

### Exercise 1

- When my father was young, he \_\_\_\_\_ work in the garden for long hours.  
a. can                      b. could                      c. will                      d. should
- He\_\_\_\_\_ have committed the crime because he was with me that day.  
a. mustn't                      b. shouldn't                      c. won't                      d. couldn't
- Since we have to be there by 8.30, we\_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi.  
a. had better                      b. may                      c. ought                      d. are able to
- It\_\_\_\_\_ rain this evening. Why don't you take an umbrella?  
a. could be                      b. must                      c. might                      d. had better
- \_\_\_\_\_ you help me with the homework?  
a. May                      b. Shall                      c. Should                      d. Will
- She hasn't eaten anything since yesterday. She\_\_\_\_\_ be really hungry.  
a. might                      b. will                      c. must                      d. can
- I put my keys on the table, but now it's gone. Someone\_\_\_\_\_ have taken it.  
a. may                      b. had to                      c. should                      d. would rather
- Daisy is reading her English test because she has a test tomorrow. She\_\_\_\_\_ be studying.  
a. will                      b. should                      c. must                      d. can
- We \_\_\_\_\_ put the fish in the fridge before it spoils.  
a. had to                      b. may                      c. can                      d. had better
- Mr. Brown is very rich. He\_\_\_\_\_ work hard for a living.  
a. mustn't                      b. shouldn't                      c. can't                      d. doesn't have to
- Tom has just got a new job. He\_\_\_\_\_ be very pleased.  
a. might                      b. must                      c. should                      d. will
- Tom painted his room black. It looks dark and dreary. He \_\_\_\_\_ have chosen another colour.  
a. should                      b. must                      c. could                      d. may
- \_\_\_\_\_ you carry this bag for me?  
a. May                      b. Should                      c. Will                      d. Shall
- You \_\_\_\_\_ throw litter on the streets.  
a. mustn't                      b. couldn't                      d. needn't                      d. won't
- My mother permitted me to go out at night. She said, "You\_\_\_\_\_ go out tonight".  
a. may                      b. have to                      c. must                      d. ought to
- It is possible that she will come to our party tonight. She come her tonight.  
a. need                      b. may                      c. should                      d. will
- They can type. They\_\_\_\_\_ type.  
a. lean how to                      b. are able to                      c. know how to                      d. both B & C

18. He advised me to take an English course. I \_\_\_\_\_ take it early.  
a. should                      b. shall                      c. will                      d. may
19. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ in the field than \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
a. to work/ to stay      b. work /stay              c. working/ staying      d. worked/stayed
20. As an orphan, he \_\_\_\_\_ earn his living alone.  
a. have to                      c. has had to              c. ought to                      d. had to

1b	2d	3a	4c	5d	6c	7a	8c	9d	10d
11b	12a	13c	14a	15a	16b	17d	18a	19b	20d

## Exercise 2

1. They prayed that their daughter \_\_\_\_\_ be lucky again.  
a. may                      b. will                      c. could                      d. might
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ all that money, so she could save some.  
a. didn't need to spend                      b. needn't have spent  
c. shouldn't spend                      d. oughtn't to spend
3. He spent all that money last week. He \_\_\_\_\_ so much.  
a. didn't need to spend                      b. shouldn't spend  
c. needn't have spent                      d. didn't have to spend
4. He had to work hard so that he \_\_\_\_\_ his family.  
a. may support                      b. supported                      c. can support                      d. might support
5. They have plenty of time, so they need not \_\_\_\_\_  
a. be hurry                      b. to hurry                      c. hurry                      d. to be hurry
6. You're having a sore throat. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor.  
a. to go                      b. went                      c. go                      d. going
7. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_ poor but happy than become rich without happiness.  
a. being                      b. he                      c. to be                      d. was
8. Sit down please \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of tea?  
a. Do you like                      b. Do you like to drink  
c. Would you like                      d. Will you like
9. Must you come when your neighbour calls?  
No, I \_\_\_\_\_  
a. must not                      b. mustn't                      c. don't have to                      d. must not come
10. May I have 2 tickets, please? two tickets, please?  
a. You must given me                      b. You have got to give me  
c. Could I have                      d. You may give me
11. He will have to stay in hospital. That's what he \_\_\_\_\_  
a. has done                      b. must do                      c. must be doing                      d. must have done
12. Do you have to buy this hat? No, I \_\_\_\_\_. It isn't necessary.  
a. mustn't                      b. won't                      c. needn't                      d. don't need
13. A man never have too many ties. It's \_\_\_\_\_  
a. unable                      b. impossible                      c. improbable                      d. incapable
14. It could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz.  
a. might not                      b. may not                      c. mustn't                      d. wasn't able to
15. This plane could get over the mountain if it rose to 10,000 feet. This means it \_\_\_\_\_ over the mountains.  
a. would succeed in getting      b. got                      c. was bale to get                      d. had got

16. The plane was then able to rise. This means it\_\_\_\_\_  
a. could rise                      b. might rise                      c. might succeed in rising                      d. rose
17. Byrd knew that he would be able to reach the South Pole. It would be\_\_\_\_\_.  
a. impossible                      b. necessary                      c. able                      d. possible
18. He ought not\_\_\_\_\_ him but she did.  
a. to tell                      b. to telling                      c. tell                      d. to have told
19. I'd rather you\_\_\_\_\_ that.  
a. do                      b. don't do                      c. won't do                      d. didn't do
20. \_\_\_\_\_ run so fast?  
a. Does he need                      b. Need he to                      c. Need he                      d. Needs he

1d	2a	3c	4d	5c	6c	7b	8c	9c	10c
11c	12c	13b	14d	15c	16a	17d	18d	19d	20c

### Exercise 3

1. He didn't need\_\_\_\_\_ out of his room in Moscow.  
a. go                      b. to going                      c. going                      d. to go
2. I could not \_\_\_\_\_ it even though I had wanted to do so.  
a. had bought                      b. buy                      c. buying                      d. have bought
3. I left my pen in this box, but it isn't there now. Someone\_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. must have taken                      b. must take                      c. had to take                      d. had taken
4. Mary received 100 dollars from her sister. She\_\_\_\_\_ the ring she wanted. It only costs 10 dollars.  
a. buys                      b. had bought                      c. bought                      d. might have bought
5. It lost my Honda last week; I hadn't locked it. You\_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. should lock                      b. should have locked                      c. ought to lock                      d. could lock
6. In 1900 the world had no deaths from rabies. Scientists\_\_\_\_\_ wonderful vaccine.  
a. has discovered                      b. discovered                      c. must have discovered                      d. should have discovered
7. Mary received 100 dollars from her sister. She\_\_\_\_\_ the computer she wanted. It costs 200 dollars.  
a. wouldn't buy                      b. hadn't bought                      c. couldn't have bought                      d. didn't buy
8. Once Helen failed in her exam. She played too much. She\_\_\_\_\_ too much.  
a. shouldn't have played                      b. should play  
c. shouldn't play                      d. wouldn't have played
9. If I had liked that watch, may be I \_\_\_\_\_ bought it.  
a. will have                      b. must have                      c. would have                      d. shall have
10. Did my sister tell you that I had been to Dalat?  
a. might have                      b. could have                      c. would have                      d. must have
11. The women of this tribe\_\_\_\_\_ precious ornaments for salt because they didn't have any salt.  
a. have traded                      b. traded                      c. would have traded                      d. could trade
12. I took my only son to the park but he didn't like it. You \_\_\_\_\_ him to the zoo.  
a. should take                      b. had to take                      c. took                      d. should have taken
13. We are now wet. You\_\_\_\_\_ the raincoats with you.  
a. should bring                      b. should have brought                      c. must bring                      d. have to bring
14. The yard is wet. It\_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
a. must rain                      b. must have rain                      c. must have rained                      d. had to rain
15. Many birds will\_\_\_\_\_ more than 3,000 miles to reach their winter homes.  
a. flying                      b. fly                      c. be fly                      d. flew

16. The pen won't write; it \_\_\_\_\_ out of ink.  
a. must run                      b. must be running      c. must have run              d. must have ran
17. The line is busy; someone \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone now.  
a. must be using              b. must have used      c. must used              d. must have been using
18. Bob is absent; he \_\_\_\_\_ sick gain now.  
a. must have been      b. must be                      c. must be being              d. must being
19. He \_\_\_\_\_ his j ob because he seems very happy.  
a. would like                      b. can like                      c. will like                      d. must like
20. She told me that she'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ on the committee.  
a. not to serve                      b. not serving                      c. not serve                      d. serving not

1d	2d	3a	4d	5b	6c	7c	8a	9c	10b
11c	12d	13b	14c	15b	16c	17a	18b	19d	20c

Name:	<b>Basis No 27</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>PHRASAL VERBS</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. He drives so quickly that I am afraid that one day he will \_\_\_\_\_ someone crossing the street.  
a. crash down                      b. knock down                      c. turn over                      d. run across
2. Hello. Is that 956782? Please put me \_\_\_\_\_ the manager.  
a. across                      b. up                      c. over                      d. through
3. The three friends all \_\_\_\_\_ for the same job.  
a. requested                      b. intended                      c. applied                      d. referred
4. I don't think he will ever get \_\_\_\_\_ the shock of his father's death.  
a. over                      b. through                      c. by                      d. off
5. The company is aiming to push \_\_\_\_\_ its share of car sales to 25% over the next two years.  
a. on                      b. up                      c. out                      d. though
6. The child hurt himself badly when he fell \_\_\_\_\_ the bedroom window.  
a. out from                      b. out of                      c. down                      d. over
7. Don't worry about trying to catch the last train home, as we can easily \_\_\_\_\_ you up for the night.  
a. take                      b. set                      c. put                      d. keep
8. I am late because my alarm clock didn't \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.  
a. come on                      b. ring out                      c. go off                      d. turn on
9. He's such a naughty child' it's amazing what his mother lets him \_\_\_\_\_ away with.  
a. go                      b. make                      c. do                      d. get
10. The factory paid \_\_\_\_\_ nearly a million pounds to their employees injured in the explosion.  
a. out                      b. in                      c. off                      d. back
11. My daughter often \_\_\_\_\_ to see me at lest once a week.  
a. calls up                      b. drops in                      c. goes up                      d. comes on
12. I think he is unwell; he was complaining \_\_\_\_\_ a headache this morning.  
a. of                      b. at                      c. from                      d. against
13. I saw a thief take Tom's wallet so I ran \_\_\_\_\_ him, but I couldn't catch him.  
a. into                      b. over                      c. near                      d. after

14. If it's raining tomorrow, we shall have to put \_\_\_\_\_ the match till Sunday.  
a. off                      b. away                      c. in                      d. on
15. There was a big hole in the road which \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic.  
a. kept down              b. held up                      c. stood back              d. sent back
16. She applied for training as a pilot, but they turned her \_\_\_\_\_ because of her poor eyesight.  
a. up                      b. back                      c. down                      d. over
17. These old houses are going to be \_\_\_\_\_ soon.  
a. laid out                      b. run down                      c. knocked out              d. pulled down
18. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ what he's doing, it's so dark down there.  
a. see through              b. make out                      c. look into                      d. show up
19. Having looked the place \_\_\_\_\_, the gang went away to make their plans.  
a. over                      b. through                      c. down                      d. out
20. Take the number 7 bus and get \_\_\_\_\_ at Forest Road.  
a. up                      b. down                      c. off                      d. outside

1b	2d	3c	4a	5b	6b	7c	8c	9d	10a
11b	12a	13d	14a	15b	16c	17d	18b	19a	20c

## Exercise 2

1. If you want to join this club, you must \_\_\_\_\_ this application form.  
a. make up                      b. write down                      c. do up                      d. fill in
2. The water company will have to \_\_\_\_\_ off water supplies while repairs to the pipes are carried out.  
a. take                      b. cut                      c. set                      d. break
3. Come \_\_\_\_\_, children! Get your coats on or you'll be late for school.  
a. along                      b. to                      c. across                      d. over
4. She tried to prevent the dog \_\_\_\_\_ running into the road.  
a. to                      b. for                      c. from                      d. against
5. The doctor told him to keep \_\_\_\_\_ sweets and chocolate to lose weight.  
a. at                      b. up                      c. back                      d. off
6. Tom was slow to catch \_\_\_\_\_, but gradually he began to understand.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. away                      d. out
7. I haven't time to speak to him now, you'll have to put him \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. off                      b. back                      c. aside                      d. away
8. You know I'll always stand \_\_\_\_\_ you if you are in trouble.  
a. for                      b. up                      c. by                      d. with
9. I disapprove \_\_\_\_\_ people smoking in public places.  
a. on                      b. at                      c. with                      d. of
10. She found it is hard to \_\_\_\_\_ up to the fact that she would never be famous.  
a. come                      b. face                      c. get                      d. keep
11. For the first few minutes she was leading the race, then she began to fall \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. out                      b. through                      c. back                      d. off
12. The job offer was too good for him to turn \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. down                      b. out                      c. off                      d. away
13. His son's death was a terrible shock and it took him a long time to \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. get round                      b. come through                      c. go over                      d. get over
14. Please come \_\_\_\_\_ and see us some time-you're always welcome.

- a. to                      b. round                      c. about                      d. away
15. She put \_\_\_\_\_ speaking to him as long as possible.  
a. over                      b. away                      c. off                      d. back
16. He filled in the necessary forms and \_\_\_\_\_ for the job.  
a. appealed                      b. asked                      c. requested                      d. applied
17. She went \_\_\_\_\_ a bad cold just before Christmas.  
a. down with                      b. in for                      c. over                      d. through
18. They had never come \_\_\_\_\_ such a beautiful little village before.  
a. at                      b. across                      c. off                      d. long
19. When the tenants failed to pay their bills, the authorities decided to cut \_\_\_\_\_ the gas supply to the flats.  
a. out                      b. down                      c. off                      d. across
20. The doctor advised me not to take \_\_\_\_\_ so much work in future.  
a. to                      b. over                      c. after                      d. on

1d	2b	3a	4c	5d	6b	7a	8c	9a	10b
11c	12a	13d	14b	15c	16d	17a	18b	19c	20d

### Exercise 3

1. The police have warned tourists to look \_\_\_\_\_ for pickpockets in the town centre.  
a. out                      b. up                      c. down                      d. forward
2. I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ of going to a party unless I hadn't been invited to.  
a. intend                      b. dream                      c. rely                      d. depend
3. If you want to be healthy; you should cut \_\_\_\_\_ on your smoking.  
a. up                      b. down                      c. out                      d. through
4. Their aim is to \_\_\_\_\_ up a new political party.  
a. strike                      b. stand                      c. set                      d. show
5. He was busy when I phoned but I hung \_\_\_\_\_ until he was free.  
a. back                      b. off                      c. to                      d. on
6. I'm not sure how old he is but he must be \_\_\_\_\_ for 70.  
a. going by                      b. getting up                      c. getting on                      d. going off
7. I absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ with everything that has been said.  
a. agree                      b. accept                      c. admit                      d. approve
8. The man who lives opposite us sometimes comes \_\_\_\_\_ for a cup for coffee.  
a. on                      b. over                      c. off                      d. to
9. The butcher cut some steak, \_\_\_\_\_ it up and handed it to me.  
a. closed                      b. wound                      c. strung                      d. wrapped
10. In order to \_\_\_\_\_ with his studies he worked though the summer.  
a. take                      b. catch on                      c. catch up                      d. take up
11. A god friend will stand \_\_\_\_\_ you when you're having trouble.  
a. by                      b. out                      c. against                      d. in
12. The meeting had to be put \_\_\_\_\_ until a later date.  
a. away                      b. on                      c. off                      d. up
13. The teachers at the school went \_\_\_\_\_ with flu one after the other.  
a. out                      b. down                      c. off                      d. under
14. The smell was so bad that it completely \_\_\_\_\_ us off our food.  
a. set                      b. took                      c. got                      d. put

15. We expected him at eight but he finally\_\_\_\_\_ at midnight.  
a. came to                      b. turned out                      c. turned in                      d. came off
16. The hall was very crowded with over fifty people\_\_\_\_\_ into it.  
a. pushed                      b. packed                      c. stuck                      d. stuffed
17. He took the trouble to write\_\_\_\_\_ the complete list for us.  
a. on                      b. through                      c. off                      d. our
18. He had to go to the bank to\_\_\_\_\_ some money for his holiday.  
a. pay up                      b. pay back                      c. draw out                      d. draw in
19. A new study group has been \_\_\_\_\_ by the United Nations  
a. set up                      b. set on                      c. put up                      d. put on
20. David always\_\_\_\_\_ over to my house after he had done his homework.  
a. passed                      b. gone                      c. went                      d. came

1a	2b	3b	4c	5d	6c	7a	8b	9d	10c
11a	12c	13b	14d	15b	16b	17d	18c	19a	20d

#### Exercise 4

1. If you want to have a pet you must be ready to look \_\_\_\_\_ it for several years.  
a. at                      b. for                      c. after                      d. over
2. I can put\_\_\_\_\_ with most things but I cannot stand noisy children  
a. on                      b. up                      c. off                      d. aside
3. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ up yet, you will soon be able to play the trumpet well.  
a. give                      b. catch                      c. break                      d. turn
4. Some drivers seem to expect everyone else to get\_\_\_\_\_ their way.  
a. off                      b. after                      c. away from                      d. out of
5. My uncle took\_\_\_\_\_ golf when he retired from work.  
a. on                      b. after                      c. up                      d. over
6. The deer\_\_\_\_\_ for the shelter of the forest when there are people about.  
a. get                      b. make                      c. go                      d. take
7. I'll call\_\_\_\_\_ you at 6 o'clock.  
a. for                      b. by                      c. up                      d. in
8. Everyone in the village\_\_\_\_\_ about the plans for the new road.  
a. contacted                      b. took care                      c. concerned                      d. was concerned
9. Mrs. Brown always\_\_\_\_\_ out in a crowd because she wore large hats.  
a. found                      b. looked                      c. stood                      d. showed
10. After his mother died, he was\_\_\_\_\_ up by his grandmother.  
a. grown                      b. brought                      c. taken                      d. drawn
11. All the plans have been put\_\_\_\_\_ for the time being.  
a. aside                      b. down                      c. on                      d. up
12. He said he would contribute money, but later he backed\_\_\_\_\_ of it.  
a. down                      b. away                      c. off                      d. out
13. All their money is \_\_\_\_\_ up in the new house which they have bought.  
a. connected                      b. limited                      c. tied                      d. trapped
14. The audience\_\_\_\_\_ out laughing when the singer fell over.  
a. called                      b. burst                      c. shouted                      d. broke
15. The general was always \_\_\_\_\_ about his past campaigns.  
a. boasting                      b. praising                      c. complimenting                      d. congratulating

16. If we want to \_\_\_\_\_ up with them we'd better hurry.  
a. come                      b. arrive                      c. approach                      d. catch
17. Unfortunately the company will have to cut \_\_\_\_\_ on staff.  
a. away                      b. back                      c. off                      d. through
18. Their enthusiasm for the new plan has \_\_\_\_\_ out.  
a. gone                      b. failed                      c. died                      d. disappeared
19. I don't see what my business has to \_\_\_\_\_ with you.  
a. do                      b. interest                      c. concern                      d. matter
20. The taxi \_\_\_\_\_ up by the kerb.  
a. drew                      b. stopped                      c. came                      d. turned

1c	2b	3a	4d	5c	6b	7a	8d	9c	10b
11a	12d	13c	14b	15a	16d	17b	18c	19a	20a

### Exercise 5

1. The doctor says I'll take a long time to get \_\_\_\_\_ the shock.  
a. past                      b. above                      c. through                      d. over
2. Once the fire \_\_\_\_\_ out we have to sit in the cold.  
a. lit                      b. fell                      c. went                      d. came
3. Do you think it's possible to \_\_\_\_\_ on nothing but fruit and vegetables?  
a. eat                      b. live                      c. enjoy                      d. make
4. The bus only stops here to \_\_\_\_\_ passengers.  
a. alight                      b. get on                      c. get off                      d. pick up
5. The child was \_\_\_\_\_ by a lorry on the safety crossing in the main street.  
a. knocked down                      b. knocked out                      c. run across                      d. run out
6. Hurry! It's time to \_\_\_\_\_ up and go to school.  
a. stand                      b. get                      c. dress                      d. start
7. Mary is very \_\_\_\_\_ up and thinks she is superior to her classmates.  
a. turned                      b. looked                      c. stuck                      d. fed
8. The frightened horse began to \_\_\_\_\_ away from the snake.  
a. fear                      b. tip                      c. throw                      d. shy
9. All his plans for starting his business fell \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. in                      b. through                      c. down                      d. away
10. Tom and Ben have fallen \_\_\_\_\_ gain and do not speak to each other.  
a. in                      b. back                      c. out                      d. through
11. The voters told John that he could \_\_\_\_\_ on their support in the election.  
a. count                      b. doubt                      c. decide                      d. expect
12. The completion of the tunnel has been held \_\_\_\_\_ owing to a strike.  
a. on                      b. off                      c. over                      d. up
13. Their teacher told them to \_\_\_\_\_ up their quarrel and be friends again.  
a. stitch                      b. mend                      c. sew                      d. patch
14. He wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ off all his work before he came to the cinema with us.  
a. finish                      b. stop                      c. end                      d. put
15. I remember Alice as a spotty girl but she's turned \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful woman.  
a. to                      b. in                      c. into                      d. on
16. Stephen always wanted to be an actor when he \_\_\_\_\_ up.  
a. came                      b. grew                      c. brought                      d. settled



17. They've \_\_\_\_\_ a new tower where that old building used to be.  
a. put up                      b. put down                      c. pushed up                      d. pushed down
18. It's high time Bill got a steady job and \_\_\_\_\_ He's almost thirty.  
a. settled in                      b. settled down                      c. turned in                      d. turned down
19. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ down the minutes late because of bad weather.  
a. put                      b. flew                      c. landed                      d. touched
20. He kept his marriage a secret for years, but eventually the truth \_\_\_\_\_  
a. went in                      b. went off                      c. came out                      d. came through

1d	2c	3a	4d	5a	6b	7c	8d	9b	10c
11a	12d	13d	14a	15c	16b	17a	18b	19d	20c

### Exercise 6

1. We're having terrible weather. Just can't put \_\_\_\_\_ it for much longer.  
a. up                      b. on                      b. away                      c. up with
2. Over the past 50 years, many illnesses have been brought \_\_\_\_\_ control.  
a. in                      b. under                      c. to                      d. over
3. When I break \_\_\_\_\_ for the summer, I 'm going to Spain for three weeks.  
a. up                      b. in                      c. out                      d. down
4. Can you remember the first time you \_\_\_\_\_ in love?  
a. felt                      b. went                      c. fell                      d. found
5. She's gradually getting \_\_\_\_\_ a bad cold, which kept her off work for a week.  
a. over                      b. up                      c. on                      d. into
6. It's very cold in here. Do you mind if I put \_\_\_\_\_ the heating?  
a. down                      b. away                      c. off                      d. on
7. I told him I'd prefer to walk, but he insisted \_\_\_\_\_ giving me a lift  
a. about                      b. on                      c. to                      d. for
8. There's a rumor that the National Bank is going to take \_\_\_\_\_ the company I work for.  
a. on                      b. off                      c. over                      d. after
9. There's a lot more traffic than usual. There must be something \_\_\_\_\_ in the city centre.  
a. going on                      b. going off                      c. getting on                      d. getting off
10. He wan't sure if he'd be any good at tennis, but actually he took \_\_\_\_\_ it immediately.  
a. after                      b. on                      c. in                      d. to
11. I've always got \_\_\_\_\_ well with old people.  
a. off                      b. on                      c. in                      d. through
12. When they \_\_\_\_\_ for the beach the sun was shining, but by the time they arrived it had clouded over.  
a. went out                      b. went off                      c. set off                      d. left out
13. After standing in the sun for more than an hour, two of the people in the queue passed \_\_\_\_\_  
a. out                      b. by                      c. up                      d. through
14. When the alarm clock went off, Tom just turned \_\_\_\_\_ and went back to sleep.  
a. down                      b. out                      c. up                      d. over
15. I'd love to get \_\_\_\_\_ from this place for a few days. I really feel I need a break.  
a. out                      b. away                      c. over                      d. down
16. The smell of floor polish still brings \_\_\_\_\_ memories of my old school.  
a. on                      b. up                      c. back                      d. over
17. In their latest attack, terrorists have tempted to blow \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge.

- a. up                      b. over                      c. through                      d. down
18. I've just spent two weeks looking \_\_\_\_\_ an old aunt of mine who's been ill.  
a. at                      b. for                      c. out for                      d. after
19. As soon as I got home from work, I changed \_\_\_\_\_ casual clothes.  
a. to                      b. into                      c. in                      d. for
20. The teacher carried \_\_\_\_\_ his threat to suspend Tom for his repeated absence from class.  
a. on with                      b. on                      c. out                      d. over

1d	2b	3a	4c	5a	6d	7b	8c	9a	10d
11b	12c	13a	14d	15b	16c	17a	18d	19b	20c

### Exercise 7

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ all his money, then closed the account.  
a. took out                      b. took away                      c. paid in                      d. paid off
2. He was convicted of using the firm's money to pay \_\_\_\_\_ his gambling.  
a. in                      b. off                      c. back                      d. towards
3. At the meeting, someone brought \_\_\_\_\_ the subject of pre-school education.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. up                      d. out
4. I take \_\_\_\_\_ everything I said about Paul. I realize now that it wasn't true.  
a. on                      b. over                      c. in                      d. back
5. Although I'd never made a sandwich before, my first attempt turned \_\_\_\_\_ quite well.  
a. over                      b. up                      c. out                      d. into
6. It's taking me longer to get \_\_\_\_\_ the operation than I thought.  
a. through                      b. by                      c. up from                      d. over
7. When the princess kissed the frog, it turned \_\_\_\_\_ a handsome prince.  
a. into                      b. up                      c. out                      d. over
8. I really like Joe's dad but I don't get \_\_\_\_\_ with his mother at all.  
a. out                      b. by                      c. on                      d. through
9. You shouldn't stay at home so much. Get \_\_\_\_\_ and make new friends.  
a. by                      b. out                      c. over                      d. away
10. I always run \_\_\_\_\_ of money before the end of the month.  
a. out                      b. back                      c. up                      d. down
11. It'll take me three years to \_\_\_\_\_ up enough money to travel round the country.  
a. pay                      b. take                      c. put                      d. save
12. As soon as she came \_\_\_\_\_ after the operation, she asked for a drink of water.  
a. across                      b. up                      c. round                      d. under
13. Bary has come \_\_\_\_\_ some good suggestions for raising the money we need.  
a. onto                      b. up with                      c. round to                      d. across with
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ everything in my bag three times but my keys were nowhere to be found.  
a. went out                      b. went over                      c. looked for                      d. looked at
15. Can you remember what to do, or do you want me to go \_\_\_\_\_ it again?  
a. by                      b. into                      c. past                      d. over
16. It was the third time in six months that the bank had been held \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. over                      b. down                      c. up                      d. out
17. Having that accident has brought \_\_\_\_\_ a complete change in his attitude to other people.  
a. in                      b. about                      c. up                      d. out
18. The light from the car \_\_\_\_\_ as it receded into the distance.

- a. faded away      b. seeped out      c. rolled away      d. shone out
19. It was so foggy that the climbers couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ out the nearby shelter.  
a. run      b. take      c. break      d. make
20. They are thinking of bringing \_\_\_\_\_ a law to make cyclists wear helmets.  
a. on      b. up      c. in      d. round

1a	2b	3c	4d	5c	6d	7a	8c	9b	10
11d	12c	13b	14a	15d	16c	17b	18a	19d	20c

Name:	<b>Basis No 28</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>PROBLEMS WITH VERBS</b>	

### Exercise 1

- Al's doctor insists \_\_\_\_\_ for a few days  
a. that he is resting      b. his resting      c. him to rest      d. that he rest
- I don't like iced tea, and \_\_\_\_\_  
a. she doesn't too      b. either doesn't she      c. neither does she      d. she doesn't neither
- We wish that you \_\_\_\_\_ such a lot of work, because we know that you would have enjoyed the party.  
a. hadn't had      b. hadn't      c. didn't have had      d. hadn't have
- Since your roommate is visiting her family this weekend, \_\_\_\_\_ you like to have dinner with us tonight.  
a. will      b. won't      c. do      d. wouldn't
- Please \_\_\_\_\_ photocopies of documents.  
a. not to submit      b. do not submit      c. no submit      d. not submit
- I \_\_\_\_\_ bacon and eggs every morning.  
a. am used to eat      b. used to eating      c. am used to eating      d. use to eat
- The team really looks good tonight because the coach had them \_\_\_\_\_ every night this week.  
a. practice      b. practiced      c. to practice      d. the practice
- Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ please?  
a. to answer the telephone      b. answering the telephone  
c. answer the telephone      d. to the telephone answering
- You \_\_\_\_\_ your seats today if you want to go to the game.  
a. had better to reserve      b. had to better reserve  
c. had better reserve      d. had to reserve better
- If it \_\_\_\_\_ so late we could have coffee.  
a. wasn't      b. isn't      c. weren't      d. not be
- Your sister used to visit you quite often \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. didn't she      b. doesn't she      c. wouldn't she      d. hadn't she
- If Bod \_\_\_\_\_ with us, he would have had a good time.  
a. would come      b. would have come      c. had come      d. came
- Frankly, I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being.  
a. do      b. didn't do      c. don't      d. didn't

14. Since they aren't answering their telephone, they\_\_\_\_\_
  - a. must have left      b. need have left      c. should have left      d. can have left
15. We were hurrying because we thought that the bell\_\_\_\_\_
  - a. had already rang      b. has already rang
  - c. had already rung      d. have already ringing
16. The breakes need \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. adjusted      b. to adjust      c. to adjustment      d. adjusting
17. I wish that we\_\_\_\_\_ with my brother when he flies to England next week.
  - a. could go      b. will go      c. had gone      d. are going
18. I am sure Miss Smith\_\_\_\_\_ use the new equipment.
  - a. knows to      b. knows the      c. knows how to      d. knows how
19. Mary and John \_\_\_\_\_ to the parties at the Student Union every Friday.
  - a. used to go      b. use to go      c. are used to go      d. were used to go
20. You \_\_\_\_\_ me, because I didn't say that.
  - a. must misunderstand      b. must be misunderstanding
  - c. must have misunderstood      d. had to misunderstand

1d	2c	3a	4d	5b	6c	7a	8b	9c	10c
11a	12c	13b	14a	15c	16d	17a	18c	19a	20c

## Exercise 2

1. I hadn't expected James to apologize but I had hoped\_\_\_\_\_
  - a. him calling me      b. that he would call me
  - c. him to call me      d. that he call me
2. My husband lived at home before we were married, and so\_\_\_\_\_
  - a. did I      b. had I      c. I had      d. I did
3. Does your new secretary \_\_\_\_\_ shorthand?
  - a. know to take      b. know how to take      c. know how take      d. know how taking
4. Tommy had his big brother \_\_\_\_\_ his shoes for him.
  - a. to tie      b. tie      c. tied      d. tying
5. I wish that he weather\_\_\_\_\_ not so warm.
  - a. was      b. be      c. were      d. is
6. His English teacher recommends that he\_\_\_\_\_ a regular degree program.
  - a. begin      b. begins      c. will begin      d. is beginning
7. Let's go out for dinner, \_\_\_\_\_?
  - a. will we      b. don't we      c. shall we      d. are were
8. I'd \_\_\_\_\_ the operation unless it is absolutely necessary.
  - a. rather not have      b. not rather had      c. rather not to have      d. rather not having
9. Would you please\_\_\_\_\_ write on the test books?
  - a. don't      b. not to      c. not      d. to not
10. The old man asked her to move because he\_\_\_\_\_ in that chair.
  - a. used to sit      b. was used to sit      c. used to sitting      d. was used to sitting
11. After the way she treated you, if I \_\_\_\_\_ in your place, I wouldn't return the call.
  - a. be      b. am      c. was      d. were
12. If I \_\_\_\_\_ the flu I would have gone with you.
  - a. hadn't      b. hadn't had      c. didn't have      d. wouldn't have had

13. He's taken his medicine, \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. hasn't he                      b. didn't he                      c. doesn't he                      d. isn't he
14. Your mother and I are looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
a. of seeing                      b. for seeing                      c. to see                      d. to seeing
15. It is imperative that you \_\_\_\_\_ there in person.  
a. be                      b. will be                      c. will                      d. are
16. \_\_\_\_\_ you rather sit by the window?  
a. Don't                      b. Will                      c. Wouldn't                      d. Won't
17. His government insisted that he \_\_\_\_\_ until he finished his degree.  
a. should stay                      b. shall stay                      c. stayed                      d. stay
18. After he had researched and \_\_\_\_\_ his paper, he found some additional material that he should have included.  
a. wrote                      b. written                      c. writing                      d. have written
19. The man who was driving the truck would not admit that he had been at fault, and \_\_\_\_\_  
a. neither the other driver                      b. neither would the other driver  
c. neither had the other driver                      d. the other driver neither
20. If it \_\_\_\_\_ rain, we'll have the party outside.  
a. wouldn't                      b. doesn't                      c. didn't                      d. won't

1b	2c	3a	4d	5b	6c	7a	8b	9c	10c
11a	12c	13a	14d	15a	16c	17d	18b	19b	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 29</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>PROBLEMS WITH NOUNS</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. Please go to \_\_\_\_\_ to pick up your ID card.  
a. third window                      b. the window three                      c. window third                      d. the third window
2. May I have two \_\_\_\_\_ instead of beans, please?  
a. corn's ear                      b. ear of corns                      c. corn ears                      d. ears of corn
3. If you want to find good information about graduate programs in the United States, look in \_\_\_\_\_ of the College Blue Books.  
a. volume two                      b. volume second                      c. the volume two                      d. second volume
4. Let's buy our tickets while I still have \_\_\_\_\_ left.  
a. a few money                      b. a little moneys                      c. a few dollars                      d. a few dollar
5. The assignment for Monday was to read \_\_\_\_\_ in your textbooks.  
a. chapter tenth                      b. the chapter ten                      c. chapter the tenth                      d. the tenth chapter
6. I always put my best \_\_\_\_\_ in a safe- deposit box.  
a. jewelries                      b. jewelry's pieces                      c. chapter the tenth                      d. the tenth chapter
7. It's a shame that you have \_\_\_\_\_ time in New York on the tour.  
a. so few                      b. so little                      c. a few                      d. a little
8. We haven't had \_\_\_\_\_ news from the disaster site since the earthquake.  
a. many                      b. quite a few                      c. much                      d. some
9. John Kennedy was \_\_\_\_\_ of the United States.

10. I'll have a cup of tea and \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. two toasts                                      b. two piece of toasts  
c. two pieces of toast                                      d. two pieces of toasts
11. The ticket agent said that the plane would be boarding at \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. the gate six                  b. sixth gate                  c. gate six                  d. the six gate
12. I will need \_\_\_\_\_ about the climate before I make a final decision.  
a. a few informations                                      b. a little informations  
c. a few information                                      d. a little information
13. Sending\_\_\_\_\_ - "Special delivery" costs about fifteen times as much as sending it "regular delivery".  
a. mails                          b. a piece of mail                  c. a mail                          d. pieces of a mail
14. The Chicago bus is parked at \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. the lane two                  b. the two lane                  c. lane to                          d. lane the two
15. We don't have \_\_\_\_\_ tonight  
a. many homeworks    b. much homeworks                                      c. many homework                  d. much homework
16. \_\_\_\_\_ ios the world's most abundant fossil fuel.  
a. The coal                          b. Coal                          c. Coals                          d. A coal
17. \_\_\_\_\_ energy in a tornado is enormous.  
a. The                          b. An                          c. A                          d. Some
18. The \_\_\_\_\_ of women earning Master's Degrees has risen sharply in recent years.  
a. sum                          b. amount                          c. number                          d. addition
19. There is \_\_\_\_\_ rainfall on the Wst Coast of the United States than on the East Coats.  
a. fewer                          b. less                          c. little                          d. few
20. In 1995\_\_\_\_\_ Hawaii was admitted to the Union as the 50th State.  
a. the                          b. a                          c. an                          d. no article

1d	2d	3a	4c	5d	6c	7b	8c	9b	10c
11c	12d	13c	14c	15d	16b	17a	18c	19b	20d

Name:	<b>Basis No 30</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>PROBLEMS WITH PRONOUNS</b>	

### Exercise 1

- [illegible]

5. I really appreciate\_\_\_\_\_ to help me, but I am sure that I will be able to manage by myself.  
a. you to offer                      b. your offering                      c. that you offer                      d. that you are offering
6. Do you know the woman \_\_\_\_\_ was hurt in the accident?  
a. which                              b. whom                              c. who                              d. whose
7. I would like to leave a message for\_\_\_\_\_ if I may.  
a. they                              b. them                              c. their                              d. theirs
8. A few of. Are planning to drive to Florida during spring break.  
a. we girls                              b. us girls                              c. girls we                              d. girls
9. This is the woman\_\_\_\_\_ the artist said posed as a model for the painting.  
a. who                              b. whom                              c. which                              d. whose
10. Of those who took the exam with Jane and \_\_\_\_\_, I am the only one who studied for it.  
a. he                              b. his                              c. him                              d. himself
11. Let you and \_\_\_\_\_ agree to settle our differences without involving any of the other students.  
a. I                              b. myself                              c. me                              d. my
12. If you had told us earlier\_\_\_\_\_ he was, we could have introduced him at the meeting.  
a. who                              b. which                              c. whom                              d. whoever
13. I always ask my sister and\_\_\_\_\_ for advice.  
a. her                              b. she                              c. hers                              d. herself
14. Two of the notebooks\_\_\_\_\_ Tom had lost on the bus were returned to the main desk at his dormitory.  
a. what                              b. who                              c. which                              d. whose
15. He didn't seem to mind \_\_\_\_\_ TV while he was trying to study.  
a. their watching                      b. that they watch                      c. them watching                      d. them to watch
16. The team has finished\_\_\_\_\_ season.  
a. its                              b. their                              c. his                              d. her
17. Neither Bod nor his friends received\_\_\_\_\_ test scores.  
a. his                              b. them's                              c. their                              d. their's
18. His parents told\_\_\_\_\_ to put his coat on.  
a. he                              b. his                              c. them                              d. him
19. Everyone has put\_\_\_\_\_ equipment back into its proper place. (British English).  
a. his                              b. their                              c. its                              d. one's
20. Someone has forgotten to put\_\_\_\_\_ name on their term paper. (British English).  
a. his                              b. her                              c. their                              d. one's

1a	2a	3d	4c	5a	6d	7a	8b	9c	10c
11b	12c	13d	14b	15c	16b	17c	18a	19d	20b

Name:	<b>Basis No 31</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>PROBLEMS WITH MODIFIERS</b>	

### Exercise 1

1. She hasn't seen her family\_\_\_\_\_ three years ago.

- a. since                      b. for                      c. from                      d. before
2. Just put your coat in\_\_\_\_\_
- a. the hall closet                      b. the closet of the hall  
c. the hall's closet                      d. hall closet
3. Bill came to work at the University thirty years\_\_\_\_\_
- a. strongly                      b. so strong                      c. from                      d. ago
4. This drink tastes a little\_\_\_\_\_ to me.
- a. strongly                      b. so strong                      c. strong                      d. too much strong
5. I like these dishes but\_\_\_\_\_ is a little too small.
- a. the tea cup                      b. the cup of tea                      c. the tea's cup                      d. the cup for the tea
6. My sister has a \_\_\_\_\_ baby.
- a. two- months-old                      b. two-month- olds                      c. two-months-olds                      d. two-month-old
7. The one in the window was\_\_\_\_\_ expensive that I couldn't afford it.
- a. so                      b. too                      c. too much                      d. very
8. We used to go skiing in Michigan every winter, but\_\_\_\_\_ for the past five seasons.
- a. I don't go                      b. I haven't gone                      c. I'm not going                      d. I didn't go
9. It is\_\_\_\_\_ day that travel advisories have been issued for most of the major highways.
- a. such snowy                      b. so snowy                      c. such a snowy                      d. such snowy a
10. Our reservations are for\_\_\_\_\_
- a. sixth June                      b. six June                      c. the sixth of June                      d. the six of June
11. They listened\_\_\_\_\_ while the examiner gave them the directions for Part I.
- a. attentive                      b. attentively                      c. attentiveness                      d. attention
12. The cookies that you sent over were\_\_\_\_\_ that I ate them all.
- a. very good                      b. too good                      c. so good                      d. good
13. Jacobson's is one of the most expensive\_\_\_\_\_ in the city.
- a. department store                      b. departments stores  
c. departments store                      d. department stores
14. I don't understand how John could have made\_\_\_\_\_ in judgment.
- a. such big mistake                      such a big mistake                      c. so a big mistake                      d. so big mistake
15. You can give me a receipt if you want to, but your word is\_\_\_\_\_ for me.
- a. enough good                      b. good as enough                      c. good enough                      d. good than enough
16. Beriberi had long been a\_\_\_\_\_ disease.
- a. seriously                      b. serious                      c. commonly                      d. community
17. God is present under the sea in \_\_\_\_\_ concentratins that it is difficult to extract it.
- a. very minute                      b. quite minute                      c. such minute                      d. so minute
18. Lightning currents \_\_\_\_\_ to the interior of an airplane.
- a. seldom penetrate                      b. penetrate seldom                      c. rare penetrate                      d. penetrate in rarity
19. This animal extracfts \_\_\_\_\_ from food to sustain itself.
- a. calories enough                      b. calories for enough  
c. enough for calories                      d. enough calories
20. The machine careated \_\_\_\_\_ that I couldn't sleep.
- a. so a noise                      b. so much noise                      c. so noisy                      d. so many noises

1a	2a	3d	4c	5a	6d	7a	8b	9c	10c
11b	12c	13d	14b	15c	16b	17c	18a	19d	20b

## Exercise 2



1. Sam usually does his work very\_\_\_\_\_ and well, but today he seemed a little preoccupied.  
a. careful                      b. careful manner      c. carefully                      d. care
2. Besides being expensive, the food in the cafeteria tastes\_\_\_\_\_  
a. badly                      b. too badly                      c. too much bad                      d. bad
3. \_\_\_\_ here since 1976 when her parents moved from New York.  
a. She's lived                      b. She's living                      c. She was living                      d. She'd live
4. We'll get\_\_\_\_\_ by train if we leave tonight  
a. fast enough there      b. there fast enough                      c. there enough fast                      d. enough fast there
5. If the cab arrives\_\_\_\_\_ you will miss you flight.  
a. lately                      b. lateness                      c. more later                      d. late
6. It was\_\_\_\_\_ that we went camping in the mountains last weekend.  
a. such nice weather      b. so nice a weather                      c. too nice weather                      d. nice weather
7. The homecoming football game will be played on\_\_\_\_\_  
a. two September                      b. the second of September  
c. September two                      d. the two of September
8. Mary overslept and was \_\_\_\_\_ late that she missed her bus.  
a. so                      b. too                      c. much                      d. very
9. Could you please tell me the\_\_\_\_ for Biology 457 and Chemistry 610?  
a. rooms numbers      b. rooms number      c. room's number      d. room numbers
10. I think it's \_\_\_\_\_ to take a few more pictures.  
a. enough light                      b. light as enough      c. light enough                      d. enough as light
11. Last Sunday was \_\_\_\_\_ that we took a drive in the country.  
a. so beautiful day                      b. such a beautiful a day  
c. such a beautiful weather                      d. so beautiful a day
12. The conference was organized for all of the\_\_\_\_\_ in the state.  
a. mathematic teachers                      b. mathematics teachers  
c. mathematics teacher                      d. mathematic's teachers
13. It is difficult to finda\_\_\_\_\_ in the Washington area for less than \$300 a month.  
a. two- bedroom apartment                      b. two-bedrooms apartment  
c. two- bedrooms apartments                      d. two- bedroom apartments
14. I am expecially glad that Bod decided to come to the party because we hadn't seen him\_\_\_\_\_ several months.  
a. since                      b. until                      c. before                      d. for
15. John and I like to watch the games on TV because we can see more\_\_\_\_\_ than we could from a seat in the stadium.  
a. clear                      b. clearness                      c. clearly                      d. clearer
16. The woman appeared \_\_\_\_\_ after her surgery.  
a. week                      b. weakly                      c. in a weak way                      d. in a weak manner
17. The student will have\_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning 18.  
a. a two- hours class                      b. a class of two hour  
c. two hours of class                      d. a two- hour class
18. V<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub>ng
19. There has been \_\_\_\_\_ little rain that the grass is yellow.  
a. such                      b. very                      c. so                      d. quite

20. He spoke for\_\_\_\_\_ that they thought he would never stop.  
 a. long time such      b. so a long time      c. a such long time      d. such a long time

1c	2d	3a	4b	5d	6a	7b	8a	9d	10c
11d	12b	13a	14d	15c	16a	17d	18*****	19c	20d

Name:	<b>Basis No 32</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:	<b>NOUNS- COMPOUND NOUNS</b>	

### Exercise 1

- A shoe of leather is a\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. leather shoe      b. Shoe leather      c. shoed leather      d. skinned leather
- This is my\_\_\_\_\_ plantation.  
 a. mother-in-law      b. mother-in-law's      c. mother-in-law's      d. mother's-in-law
- \_\_\_\_\_ shoes are always of various types.  
 a. Woman'      b. Womans'      c. Women's      d. Womens'
- Glasses for holding beer are\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. glass-beer      b. beerglasses      c. glasses of beer      d. beer's glasses
- A horse which runs races is called a\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. horse race      b. race-horse      c. racing horse      d. races-horse
- A table used for writing is called\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. table- writing      b. a writing      c. a written table      d. a writing table
- They are\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. woman- professors      b. womans- professors  
 c. women professors      d. women's professors
- We have got a lot of\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. book of exercise      b. exercises-books      c. exercise's book's      d. exercise-books
- They'd like to spend the week-end at \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. their aunt's      b. their aunt      c. their aunt's house      d. their aunt
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is long.  
 a. knife's handle      b. knif's handle      c. knife handle      d. handle of the knife
- Do you hear any voice? It's\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. my wife's      b. my wife  
 c. my wife's voice      d. the voice of my wife
- That man has two\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. brother-in-law      b. brothers-in-law      c. brother-ins-law      d. brother-in-laws
- The\_\_\_\_\_ toys are cheap.  
 a. child's      b. children's      c. childrens'      d. childrens
- Next month we have two\_\_\_\_\_ holiday.  
 a. week      b. weeks      c. weeks'      d. week's
- We must follow\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. the will of the dead      b. the dead of will  
 c. the dead's will      d. the dead will
- A meeting held during the night is a\_\_\_\_\_  
 a. meeting night      b. nightly meeting      c. night- meeting      d. nighty meeting

17. It has belonged to our family. It's the\_\_\_\_\_
- a. families                      b. families'                      c. family's                      d. familys'
18. \_\_\_\_\_ for instance, might find it hard to laugh at a Russian joke.
- a. The French                      b. A French                      c. A man in France                      d. If you were French
19. As he hated\_\_\_\_\_, he decided to desert.
- a. the life of army                      b. life in the army                      c. life of the army                      d. the army for life
20. The latest exhibitions, films or plays are only\_\_\_\_\_
- a. by bus a short distance sway                      b. a short distance by bus away
- c. a short distance away by bus                      d. the distance of a short bus away

1a	2b	3c	4b	5b	6b	7c	8d	9a	10d
11a	12b	13b	14c	15a	16c	17c	18a	19b	20c

Name:	<b>Basis No 33 INVERSION</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

### Exercise 1

1. Never \_\_\_\_\_ me again.
- a. will be she love                      b. she loves                      c. she won't love                      d. she will love
2. Not only\_\_\_\_\_ but she is also very intelligent
- a. she is beautiful                      b. beautiful she is                      c. is she beautiful                      d. beautiful is she
3. No sooner\_\_\_\_\_ out that it rained.
- a. did I go                      b. I went                      c. had I gone                      d. I had gone
4. Seldom\_\_\_\_\_ the guitar.
- a. he plays                      b. does he play                      c. he doesn't play                      d. he does play
5. Hardly\_\_\_\_\_ a wrok whether son came back.
- a. couldn't she say                      b. she could say                      c. she couldn't say                      d. could she say
6. Often\_\_\_\_\_ a meeting.
- a. do we have                      b. we do have                      c. have we                      d. we have
7. Many a time\_\_\_\_\_ he wants to maary me
- a. said he                      b. he said                      c. has he said                      d. he has said
8. Only at weekend\_\_\_\_\_ my kids to Water Park
- a. I don't take                      b. do I take                      c. I take                      d. I do take
9. So old \_\_\_\_\_ that she couldn't dance.
- a. She wasn't                      b. she was                      c. wasn't she                      d. was he
10. \_\_\_\_\_ here yesterday, you would have met me.
- a. Were you                      b. you were                      c. Had you been                      d. You had been
11. On the battle field\_\_\_\_\_
- a. the tanks did lie                      b. the tanks lay                      c. did the tanks lie                      d. lay the tanks
12. At no time\_\_\_\_\_ greater opportunities.
- a. did women had                      b. has women had                      c. does women have                      d. have women had
13. Not once\_\_\_\_\_ into her eyes.
- a. he looked                      b. does he looked                      c. did he look                      d. looked he
14. \_\_\_\_\_ has the work bee so easy.

- a. Never                      b. only by                      c. When                      d. For
15. Now here\_\_\_\_\_ such cooperative staff.  
a. you can find              b. you found              c. you could find              d. can you find
16. Never before\_\_\_\_\_ in an earnest attempt to resolve their differences.  
a. have the leaders of these two countries met  
b. the leaders of these two countries have met  
c. have the leaders of these two countries meet  
d. met the leaders of these two countries
17. Not only the child, but also the grandparents\_\_\_\_\_  
a. is joining                      b. joins                      c. were joining                      d. has joined
18. Seldom\_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper.  
a. buys Anna                      b. does Anna buy                      c. bought Anna                      d. Anna does buy
19. Not only\_\_\_\_\_ at the post office, \_\_\_\_\_ at the grocery store.  
a. does Mary work/but she also works                      b. works Mary/but she also works  
c. does Mary work/but does she also work                      d. had entered she
20. No sooner\_\_\_\_\_ the house than the phone started to ring.  
a. had she entered                      b. she had entered                      c. entered she                      d. had entered she

1a	2c	3c	4b	5d	6a	7c	8b	9d	10c
11d	12d	13c	14a	15d	16a	17c	18b	19a	20a

## Exercise 2

1. Only by saving money\_\_\_\_\_ a house.  
a. he buys                      b. he can buy                      c. can he buy                      d. buy she
2. Not even once\_\_\_\_\_ the truth  
a. he tells                      b. he tell                      c. tells he                      d. has she told
3. Choose the correct inverted form.  
a. Into the room came the teachers  
b. Not only lazy she is but she is naughty  
c. No sooner had he drunk a cup of coffee than he asked another.  
d. A and care correct
4. Not only\_\_\_\_\_ beautiful but she is graceful as well.  
a. did she                      b. she was                      c. is she                      d. she is
5. No sooner\_\_\_\_\_ than he begins to be washed.  
a. is a human being born                      b. was a human being born  
c. a human being born                      d. a human being had been  
born
6. Seldom\_\_\_\_\_ treated like that.  
a. I have been                      b. am I                      c. I am                      d. I had been
7. Over there\_\_\_\_\_ the shop that sells souvenirs.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. has                      d. have
8. Never before\_\_\_\_\_ such a disaster.  
a. they suffer                      b. they have suffered                      c. had they suffered                      d. they  
had suffered
9. Only if I had known the difference\_\_\_\_\_ the more expensive car.  
a. would I bought                      b. I would have bought  
c. would I buy                      d. would I have bought

10. Neither Mary nor her friends\_\_\_\_\_ going to the party.  
a. is                              b. are                              c. was                              d. a or b
11. Only once a day\_\_\_\_\_ home.  
a. does Mary leave      b. left Mary                      c. Mary leaves                      d. will Mary left
12. Only once a day\_\_\_\_\_ home.  
a. we can speak              b. can we speak              c. we speak                      d. we cannot speak
13. Many a time\_\_\_\_\_ this mistake.  
a. he makes                      b. he has made                      c. did he make                      d. will he make
14. Never\_\_\_\_\_ the exact cause of earthquakes.  
a. scientists discovered                      b. did scientists discovered  
c. do scientists discover                      d. have scientists discovered
15. Nowhere else\_\_\_\_\_  
a. they can go                      b. can they go                      c. they can't go                      d. can't they go
16. Only when at home\_\_\_\_\_ her children  
a. does she scold              b. she scolds                      c. has she scolded                      d. she has scolded
17. Not a penny\_\_\_\_\_ me.  
a. did he give                      b. he gave                      c. he has given                      d. he has gave
18. No longer\_\_\_\_\_ women bear a lot of children.  
a. does                              b. did                              c. doing                              d. do
19. Among them\_\_\_\_\_ several sacks of white flour.  
a. were                              b. is                              c. be                              d. are
20. On a hill in front of them\_\_\_\_\_ a great castle.  
a. standing                      b. stand                              c. to stand                              d. stood

1c	2d	3d	4c	5a	6b	7a	8c	9d	10b
11a	12d	13d	14b	15a	16c	17b	18c	19d	20a

### Exercise 3

1. "This store has such high prices".  
"I agree. Never again\_\_\_\_\_ here".  
a. I will shop                      b. will I shop                      c. I do shop                      d. shop I
2. "Is this machine often in need of repair?"  
"No, \_\_\_\_\_ problems to arise".  
a. Seldom don't we expect                      b. We expect seldom  
c. Seldom we expect                      d. Seldom do we expect
3. "I can't see the stage very well from here".  
" \_\_\_\_\_"  
a. Neither can't I                      b. Neither I can                      c. I can't neither                      d. Neither can I
4. Not until the early 1900s\_\_\_\_\_ to vote in the United States.  
a. women were allowed                      b. were women allowed  
c. they allowed women                      d. when women were allowd
5. Only recently\_\_\_\_\_ a favourite sport in the United States.  
a. has jogging become                      b. has become jogging  
c. when jogging became                      d. as jogging has become
6. "This is one of the oldest trees in the world"  
" \_\_\_\_\_ such a big tree".  
a. Never I have seen                      b. I haven't never seen



## Exercise 1

1. She was very surprised\_\_\_\_\_ the grade she received.  
a. at                                  b. on                                  c. of                                  d. about
2. We might need more food, depending\_\_\_\_\_ how many people turn up.  
a. for                                  b. on                                  c. at                                  d. wit
3. Jane doesn't spend much money\_\_\_\_\_ clothes.  
a. over                                  b. about                                  c. at                                  d. on
4. She always takes good care\_\_\_\_\_ her children.  
a. for                                  b. in                                  c. of                                  d. with
5. A sign warned motorists\_\_\_\_\_ dangers.  
a. of                                  b. for                                  c. about                                  d. a and c
6. They translated the letter \_\_\_\_\_ French.  
a. for                                  b. with                                  c. into                                  d. about
7. I was disappointed\_\_\_\_\_ the grade I received on my last essay.  
a. for                                  b. about                                  c. to                                  d. a and b
8. The medical center is close \_\_\_\_\_ campus.  
a. to                                  b. for                                  c. up                                  d. with
9. We went there\_\_\_\_\_ car and stayed there for the whole day.  
a. in                                  b. on                                  c. with                                  d. by
10. We started our journey \_\_\_\_\_ foot.  
a. with                                  b. by                                  c. on                                  d. in
11. He always prevents me\_\_\_\_\_ doing my duty.  
a. of                                  b. from                                  c. with                                  d. against
12. I write letters \_\_\_\_\_ my right hand.  
a. in                                  b. by                                  c. with                                  d. at
13. The war victims suffered terribly\_\_\_\_\_ cold and hunger.  
a. with                                  b. from                                  c. through                                  d. of
14. She is absent\_\_\_\_\_ class  
a. at                                  b. from                                  c. to                                  d. away
15. It is very nice\_\_\_\_\_ you to take so much trouble.  
a. of                                  b. to                                  c. for                                  d. from
16. You may write\_\_\_\_\_ pencil.  
a. with                                  b. by                                  c. in                                  d. on
17. He congratulated me\_\_\_\_\_ winning the competition.  
a. of                                  b. on                                  c. at                                  d. about
18. Remember me\_\_\_\_\_ your parents.  
a. to                                  b. for                                  c. with                                  d. about
19. Mr. Foster lives\_\_\_\_\_ 667E 76th street\_\_\_\_\_ New York.  
a. in/in                                  b. at/in                                  c. on/in                                  d. in/on
20. We reached\_\_\_\_\_ her house safe and sound.  
a. at                                  b. to  
c. with                                  d. no word is needed

1a	2b	3d	4c	5d	6c	7b	8a	9d	10c
11b	12c	13b	14b	15a	16c	17b	18a	19b	20d

## Exercise 2

1. He insisted\_\_\_\_\_ taking us dinner.  
a. on                                      b. in                                      c. over                                      d. of
2. Do you believe\_\_\_\_\_ ghosts?  
a. no preposition                      b. in                                      c. on                                      d. at
3. Ed depends\_\_\_\_\_ his family for financial support.  
a. on                                      b. in                                      c. of                                      d. at
4. Ann looked\_\_\_\_\_ the mirror and admired her new blouse.  
a. in                                      b. at                                      c. on                                      d. into
5. The new manager's name is familiar\_\_\_\_\_ most of us.  
a. as                                      b. from                                      c. to                                      d. with
6. Those books deal mainly\_\_\_\_\_ tropical plants.  
a. with                                      b. in                                      c. for                                      d. up
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the game last evening, my cousin hurt his ankle.  
a. For                                      b. During                                      c. Since                                      d. From
8. Water consists\_\_\_\_\_ oxygen and hydrogen.  
a. about                                      b. with                                      c. on                                      d. of
9. There is an increasing demand\_\_\_\_\_ taller building in big cities.  
a. with                                      b. on                                      c. for                                      d. of
10. Is the United States the wealthiest country\_\_\_\_\_ the world?  
a. of                                      b. in                                      c. for                                      d. of
11. When \_\_\_\_\_ Rome do as the Romans do.  
a. with                                      b. for                                      c. in                                      d. like
12. This must be done\_\_\_\_\_ any price.  
a. for                                      b. at                                      c. in                                      d. with
13. Your request\_\_\_\_\_ a scholarship has been taken into account.  
a. for                                      b. in                                      c. under                                      d. into
14. He succeeded\_\_\_\_\_ getting a scholarship.  
a. in                                      b. about                                      c. for                                      d. on
15. Mark Twain based the story\_\_\_\_\_his experience in the West.  
a. on                                      b. from                                      c. in                                      d. on
16. We just rested\_\_\_\_\_ short time.  
a. at                                      b. since                                      c. for                                      d. in
17. Don't put\_\_\_\_\_ until tomorrow what you can do today.  
a. away                                      b. off                                      c. aside                                      d. up
18. John Harcourt was ashamed\_\_\_\_\_ his father.  
a. at                                      b. with                                      c. of                                      d. about
19. I prefer coffee\_\_\_\_\_ tea.  
a. than                                      b. to                                      c. from                                      d. for
20. If you don't know the meaning of the word, look it\_\_ in the dictionary.  
a. up                                      b. on                                      c. after                                      d. for

1a	2b	3a	4a	5c	6a	7b	8d	9c	10b
11c	12b	13a	14a	15d	16c	17b	18c	19b	20a

## Exercise 3

1. Washington State is famous\_\_\_\_\_ its apples.



- a. in                      b. for                      c. of                      d. with
2. Was your choice of research topic acceptable \_\_\_\_\_ your instructor.  
a. for                      b. to                      c. on                      d. upon
3. People who are afraid\_\_\_\_\_ heights are called acrophobes.  
a. of                      b. on                      c. in                      d. to
4. Water is essential\_\_\_\_\_ all life.  
a. on                      b. for                      c. in                      d. with
5. Were you aware\_\_\_\_\_ the regulations against smoking in this area?  
a. in                      b. with                      c. of                      d. about
6. Tepees are characteristic\_\_\_\_\_ the Indian tribes of the Great Plains.  
a. of                      b. upon                      c. from                      d. about
7. Will this office be adequate\_\_\_\_\_ your company's need?  
a. on                      b. for                      c. to                      d. with
8. I'm not familiar\_\_\_\_\_ that song.  
a. to                      b. of                      c. with                      d. about
9. One meter is approximately equal \_\_\_\_\_ a yard.  
a. about                      b. on                      c. to                      d. with
10. This movie is based\_\_\_\_\_ a true story.  
a. of                      b. at                      c. about                      d. on
11. This summer, he will be eligible\_\_\_\_\_ a three week vacation.  
a. on                      b. about                      c. of                      d. to
12. What he said is contrary\_\_\_\_\_ common sense.  
a. for                      b. about                      c. of                      d. to
13. The art museum is located next\_\_\_\_\_ the museum of natural history on State Street.  
a. to                      b. for                      c. on                      d. with
14. Many vegetables, including tomatoes, and corn, are native\_\_\_\_\_ the New World.  
a. for                      b. to                      c. about                      d. upon
15. This style of architecture is typical\_\_\_\_\_ the Colonial period.  
a. of                      b. to                      c. about                      d. with
16. Oxygen, fuel, and heat are all necessary\_\_\_\_\_ combustion.  
a. with                      b. for                      c. about                      d. in
17. This apartment would be too crowded for two people, but it is perfect\_\_\_\_\_ one  
a. about                      b. with                      c. for                      d. to
18. This variety of seed is inferior \_\_\_\_\_ the type I planted last year.  
a. with                      b. upon                      c. up                      d. to
19. Thank you very much\_\_\_\_\_ what you have done for me.  
a. of                      b. up                      c. for                      d. about
20. Bluegrass music is some what different\_\_\_\_\_ other types of country music.  
a. from                      b. with                      c. for                      d. to

1b	2b	3a	4b	5c	6a	7b	8c	9c	10d
11d	12d	13a	14b	15a	16b	17c	18d	19c	20a

#### Exercise 4

1. I am sure he didn't break the plate\_\_\_\_\_ purpose.  
a. in                      b. at                      c. for                      d. on
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the whole, I enjoyed the movie.

- a. On                      b. In                      c. At                      d. Up
3. We can't get access\_\_\_\_\_ the Internet where we live.  
a. to                      b. on                      c. at                      d. with
4. There must be\_\_\_\_\_ least one vowel in every English word.  
a. at                      b. on                      c. in                      d. upon
5. This book is based\_\_\_\_\_ part on fact.  
a. in                      b. upon                      c. at                      d. on
6. \_\_\_\_\_ general, I found zoology to be an easier subject than botany.  
a. On                      b. In                      c. At                      d. With
7. John F. Kenedy was the first President to be born\_\_\_\_\_ the twentieth century.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. up
8. She'll come home \_\_\_\_\_ April.  
a. on                      b. in                      c. at                      d. for
9. We were all fascinated\_\_\_\_\_ the things we saw.  
a. on                      b. in                      c. by                      d. for
10. I like to shower in the morning, but my roommate likes to shower \_\_\_\_\_ night.  
a. at                      b. on                      c. in                      d. with
11. He has been absent\_\_\_\_\_ school very often lately.  
a. from                      b. on                      c. in                      d. with
12. She wants to be financially independent\_\_\_\_\_ her.  
a. about                      b. of                      c. in                      d. with
13. Mrs. Liz was accused\_\_\_\_\_ having stolen the car.  
a. of                      b. with                      c. in                      d. upon
14. We are her to provide you\_\_\_\_\_ the best service possible.  
a. of                      b. with                      c. to                      d. for
15. The government is trying to make the country safe\_\_\_\_\_ terrorist attacks.  
a. from                      b. of                      c. at                      d. for
16. Please put your stuff away to make room\_\_\_\_\_ the new computer.  
a. from                      b. upon                      c. about                      d. for
17. They prevented me\_\_\_\_\_ entering the house.  
a. from                      b. on                      c. with                      d. at
18. The police blamed the mother\_\_\_\_\_ neglecting her child.  
a. to                      b. for                      c. with                      d. of
19. She returned\_\_\_\_\_ China after spending much time abroad.  
a. in                      b. from                      c. to                      d. at
20. Last night I was invited\_\_\_\_\_ a formal get-together and I enjoyed myself a great deal.  
a. to                      b. at                      c. for                      d. about

1d	2a	3a	4a	5a	6a	7a	8b	9c	10a
11a	12b	13a	14b	15a	16d	17a	18b	19c	20a

Name:	<b>Basis No 35 SENTENCE STRUCTURE</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

### Exercise 1

1. Aymara\_\_\_\_\_ an Indian language spoken by approximately one million people in Bolivia and Peru.  
a. which is                      b. being                      c. is                      d. it is
2. Many North American universities\_\_\_\_\_ by private donations.  
a. supported                      b. are supported                      c. which are supported                      d. support
3. \_\_\_\_\_ direct link exists between seat belt use and fewer traffic fatalities.  
a. There is a                      b. A                      c. That there is a                      d. Because
4. \_\_\_\_\_ many people learn to make their own repairs and home improvements.  
a. When having instruction manuals                      b. There are instruction manuals  
c. From instruction manuals                      d. It is instruction manuals
5. Lake Superior\_\_\_\_\_, borders on the United States and Canada.  
a. in the world is the largest lake  
b. is largest lake in the world  
c. it is the largest lake in the world  
d. which is the largest lake in the world
6. Taj Mahl, \_\_\_\_\_ by Shah Janhan for his wife, is thought to be one of the great architectural wonders of the world.  
a. being built                      b. was built                      c. built                      d. been built
7. The Tomb of the Unknown Soldier\_\_\_\_\_ to unidentified soldiers killed in battle, is located in Arlington, Virginia.  
a. which a monument                      b. a monument  
c. is a monument                      d. a monument being
8. \_\_\_\_\_ volcanos can destroy large areas of vegetation.  
a. They erupt                      b. When they erupt  
c. When eruption                      d. Their eruption
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is the biggest city in Michigan, it is not the capital.  
a. Detroit                      b. It Detroit                      c. Although Detroit                      d. Detroit, which
10. \_\_\_\_\_ black cats are bad luck is considered a superstition rather than a fact.  
a. That                      b. The                      c. Although                      d. It is that
11. Steel\_\_\_\_\_ with chromium to produce a non corrosive substance known as stainless steel.  
a. is combined                      c. combining                      b. that is combined                      d. when combined
12. \_\_\_\_\_ the 1930s and 1940s, F.D. Roosevelt was elected to the presidency four times.  
a. Since during                      b. During                      c. Although during                      d. While during
13. \_\_\_\_\_ in 1636, Harvard is one of the most famous universities in the United States.  
a. Founding                      b. Founded                      c. It was founded                      d. Being founded
14. Johnny Carson\_\_\_\_\_ late night TV program is watched by millions of insomniacs in the United States, has been on the air for over twenty years.  
a. whose                      b. who has a                      c. which is a                      d. however his
15. \_\_\_\_\_, Jenny Churchill was born in the United States and married an Englishman.  
a. She was the mother of Winston Churchill  
b. The mother of Winston Churchill  
c. Her son was Winston Churchill  
d. Winston Churchill was her son
16. A tornado touched down today in Kansas, \_\_\_\_\_ destruction to cornfields and telephone lines.  
a. caused                      b. causing                      c. that caused                      d. it caused
17. Until the fifties, \_\_\_\_\_ were still in some cities to deliver milk and vegetables.

- a. horses and carts                      b. there were horses and carts  
c. when horses and carts                d. that horses and carts
18. \_\_\_\_\_ the percentage of working women in the United States has doubled since 1940 has been the result of both economic and social factors.
- a. The                      b. That the                      c. There is the                      d. It is the
19. \_\_\_\_\_ species of plants exist in North America that can cause an allergic skin reaction in humans.
- a. There are several    b. If there are several                      c. Several                      d. It has several
20. A silo is a large cylindrical structure\_\_\_\_\_
- a. the storage of crops                      b. in which crops are stored  
c. where crops are stored there                      d. they store crops there

1c	2b	3b	4c	5d	6c	7b	8b	9c	10a
11a	12b	13b	14a	15b	16b	17a	18b	19c	20b

## Exercise 2

1. Barns \_\_\_\_\_ to store crops and house animals.  
a. built                      b. that are built              c. being built              d. are built
2. Large block of ice were usually used for refrigeration until the 1990s \_\_\_\_  
a. When the electric refrigerator was invented  
b. The electric refrigerator was invented  
c. They invented the electric refrigerator  
d. The electric refrigerator being invented then
3. \_\_\_\_\_, leaves from certain trees such as the maple and sassafras turn bright colors.  
a. During the fall              b. While the fall              c. The fall comes              d. When comes fall
4. \_\_\_\_\_ in 1963, John F. Kennedy was perhaps the most popular post World War II president.  
a. He was shot by Lee Harvey Oswald              b. His being shot by Lee Harvey Oswald  
c. Shot by Lee Harvey Oswald              d. Lee Harvey Oswald shot him
5. \_\_\_\_\_ watercress is found along streams or in low, wet areas.  
a. Often there is              b. Often              c. Where often              d. It is often when
6. \_\_\_\_\_ built as a private home for Elvis Presley, Graceland is now open to the public.  
a. Although              b. It was              c. Being              d. When
7. \_\_\_\_\_ runned of all times is Jesse Owens, who broke six world records in one day.  
a. There was the greatest              b. He was the greatest  
c. The greatest              d. That he was the greatest
8. \_\_\_\_\_ of leather, horse saddles are sometimes elaboratory tooled.  
a. They are made              b. What are made              c. They make them              d. Made
9. Mount Vernon, \_\_\_\_\_, has recently been restored to its original colors.  
a. George Washington lived there              b. it was where George Washington lived  
c. where George Washington lived              d. the place that lived in George Washington
10. Writers can accurately describe objects \_\_\_\_\_ have never seen.  
a. that              b. how they              c. they              d. if they
11. The most devastating of all storms \_\_\_\_\_ the hurricane, which can measure over 100 miles in diameter.  
a. is              b. which is              c. being              d. is that
12. Pioneers, \_\_\_\_\_ in isolated areas of the United States, were almost totally self-sufficient.

- a. who living      b. living      c. lived      d. who that lived
13. \_\_\_\_\_ is a belief generally held by people who live in colder climates.  
 a. That weather affects a person's mood  
 b. Weather affects a person's mood  
 c. A person's mood is affected by weather  
 d. Although a person's mood is affected by weather
14. \_\_\_\_\_ in 1861 and lasted for four years.  
 a. The Civil War began      b. When the Civil War began  
 c. The Civil War beginning      d. The beginning of the Civil War
15. The tool \_\_\_\_\_ to a wall or other surface is called a trowel.  
 a. that we apply plaster      b. that plaster applies  
 c. whose plaster as applied      d. with which plaster is applied
16. The banjo \_\_\_\_\_ a stringed musical instrument native to the United States.  
 a. that is      b. it is      c. being      d. is
17. \_\_\_\_\_, meat takes on the flavor of the wood it was smoked in.  
 a. It's when it's smoked      b. When is it smoked  
 c. When it is smoked      d. If, when it is smoked
18. The assembly line, \_\_\_\_\_ by Henry Ford, has brought about many significant changes in automobile production.  
 a. that invented      b. what was invented  
 c. was invented      d. which was invented
19. \_\_\_\_\_ her father's advice, Sarah Dade chose medicine as her course of studies.  
 a. Although      b. Against      c. It was contrary to      d. Opposite
20. \_\_\_\_\_ important mining area, Kentucky is located in the east central section of the United States.  
 a. An      b. There is an      c. Being      d. It is an

1d	2a	3a	4c	5b	6a	7c	8d	9c	10c
11a	12b	13a	14a	15d	16d	17d	18d	19b	20a

### Exercise 3

1. Gabriel Garcia Marquez, a Colombian writer whose book One Hundred Years of Solitude is among his most famous, \_\_\_\_\_ the Nobel prize in 1982.  
 a. who won      b. won      c. which won      d. having won
2. \_\_\_\_\_, Eva Peron, the wife of Argentinean president Juan Peron, died of cancer.  
 a. She was age thirty- one      b. At the age of thirty-one  
 c. Age thirty- one years      d. At the age of thirty-one years old
3. \_\_\_\_\_ families in the United States today have more than two to three children.  
 a. There are few      b. They are few      c. Few      d. Although few
4. \_\_\_\_\_ in large quantities in the Middle East, oil became known as black gold because of the large profits it brought.  
 a. Discovering      b. Which was discovered  
 c. Discovered      d. That when discovered
5. Custard is an egg dessert \_\_\_\_\_ primarily of eggs, sugar, and milk.  
 a. consisting      b. consists      c. which consisting      d. which is consisted
6. \_\_\_\_\_ main types of book covers: hardbound and softbound.  
 a. Exist two      b. Two      c. There are two      d. Have two

7. A higher crime rate exists in cities\_\_\_\_\_ a large percentage of unemployed.  
a. that having                      b. where have                      c. which they have                      d. that have
8. \_\_\_\_\_, musicians, and athletes who have reached a certain level of success are among the highest paid professionals in the world.  
a. Actors                      b. There are actors                      c. It is actors                      d. That actors
9. The fact\_\_\_\_\_ doctors recommed that children with hypertension drink coffee is surprising.  
a. what                      b. is that                      c. that                      d. of
10. The cost of shipping a car is related to\_\_\_\_\_  
a. how much does it weight                      b. how it weights much  
c. that it weights                      d. how much it weights
11. A soft bound book is a book\_\_\_\_\_ a light, flexible cardboard.  
a. that cover is made of                      b. whose cover is made of  
c. which cover is made of                      d. made of a cover is
12. Because no official records were kept in certain rural areas until recently, some elderly people do not know.  
a. When they were born                      b. that they born  
c. when were they born                      d. hen was their birth
13. \_\_\_\_\_ is made from cellulose is a little-know fact.  
a. Rayon                      b. That rayon                      c. Being rayon                      d. What rayon
14. \_\_\_\_\_ telephone service between New York and London began in 1927.  
a. It was the first                      b. There was the first                      c. The first                      d. Since the first
15. Although born in Germany, \_\_\_\_\_ a citizen of the United States in 1940.  
a. but Albert Einstein became                      b. that Albert Einstein became  
c. Albert Einstein became                      d. since became Albert Einstein
16. I'm going to South Carolina\_\_\_\_\_ the semester is over.  
a. when                      b. while                      c. during                      d. at
17. Sky diving, a difficult and dangerous sport, \_\_\_\_\_ very popular with both men and women in the United States.  
a.                      b. is                      c. becoming                      d. become
18. Leather shoes\_\_\_\_\_ than plastic ones.  
a. that are more durable                      b. being more durable  
c. more durable                      d. are more durable
19. The GMAT test\_\_\_\_\_ to students who are interested in a career in business.  
a. given                      b. although it is given  
c. since it is given                      d. is given
20. Not many U.S hospitals exist \_\_\_\_\_ treat severe burns.  
a. that                      b. whom                      c. who                      d. where

1b	2b	3c	4c	5b	6a	7c	8d	9c	10c
11a	12b	13a	14a	15d	16d	17c	18d	19b	20a

Name:	<b>Basis No 36 SHOWING RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN IDEAS</b>	<b>Mark</b>
Class:		

### Exercise 1

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Paul bring the money for our lunch, we'll go right down to the cafeteria.  
a. Since                      b. As soon as                      c. Now that                      d. Until
2. My mouth is burning! This is \_\_\_\_\_ spicy food that I don't think I can finish it.  
a. such                      b. so                      c. very                      d. too
3. Both my books \_\_\_\_\_ from my room last night.  
a. were stolen and my wallet                      b. and my wallet were stolen  
c. and my wallet was stolen                      d. were and my wallet was stolen
4. When \_\_\_\_\_ a dictionary, you need to be able to understand the symbols and abbreviations it contains.  
a. having used                      b. use                      c. to use                      d. using
5. Bats are fascinating \_\_\_\_\_ have many interesting and amazing qualities.  
a. animals. Therefore, they                      b. animals, they  
c. animals. They                      d. animal. Because they
6. While \_\_\_\_\_ to help Tim with his math, I got impatient because he wouldn't pay attention to what I was saying.  
a. I am trying                      b. having tried                      c. I try                      d. trying
7. \_\_\_\_\_ extremely bad weather in the mountains, we're no longer considering our skiing trip.  
a. Due to                      b. Because                      c. Since                      d. Due to the fact that
8. Emily is motivated to study \_\_\_\_\_ she knows that a good education can improve her life.  
a. therefore                      b. because of                      c. because                      d. so
9. Sonia broke her leg in two place \_\_\_\_\_, she had to wear a cast and use crutches for three months.  
a. Inasmuch as                      b. Consequently                      c. For that                      d. Because
10. Our village had \_\_\_\_\_ money available for education that the schools had to close.  
a. so little                      b. such little                      c. so much                      d. such much
11. Hundred of species of Hawaiian flowers have become extinct or rare \_\_\_\_\_ land development and the grazing of wild goats.  
a. now that                      b. due to                      c. because                      d. for
12. Tom Booth is one the best players in the country. We have won al of our games \_\_\_\_\_ he joined our team.  
a. when                      b. the first                      c. since                      d. due to
13. Joe seemed to be in a good mood, \_\_\_\_\_ he snapped at me angrily when I asked him to join us.  
a. yet                      b. so                      c. for                      d. and
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Jan arrives, we will have finished this group project.  
a. By the time                      b. Until                      c. Now that                      d. Since
15. For the most part, young children spend their time playing, eating, and \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.  
a. they sleep                      b. sleeping                      c. sleep                      d. they are sleeping
16. Joan worked in a vineyard last summer \_\_\_\_\_ money for school expenses.  
a. because to earn                      b. so she earns  
c. for she earned                      d. so that she could earn
17. \_\_\_\_\_ unprepared for the exam, I felt sure I would get a low score.  
a. Being                      b. Having                      c. Because                      d. Upon

18. Ever since\_\_\_\_\_ Ted the bad news, he's been avoiding me.  
a. telling                      b. told                      c. I told                      d. having told
19. \_\_\_\_\_ my daughter reaches the age of sixteen, she will be able to drive.  
a. Having                      b. Since                      c. one                      d. Because
20. Matt will enjoy skiing more the next time he goes to Mr. Baker \_\_\_\_\_ he was had skiing lessons.  
a. so that                      b. before                      c. now that                      d. and

1b	2a	3b	4d	5c	6d	7a	8c	9b	10a
11b	12c	13a	14a	15b	16d	17a	18c	19c	20c

## Exercise 2

1. Some people are tall, whereas others are\_\_\_\_\_  
a. intelligent                      b. thin                      c. short                      d. large
2. A box is square, whereas\_\_\_\_\_  
a. a rectangle has four sides                      b. my village has a town square in the centre  
c. we use envelopes for letters                      d. a circle is round
3. While some parts of the world get an abundance of rain, others\_\_\_\_\_  
a. are warm and humid                      b. are cold and wet  
c. get little or none                      d. get a lot
4. In some nations coffee is the favourite beverage, while\_\_\_\_\_  
a. I like tea                      b. in has caffeine                      c. in others it is tea                      d. tea has caffeine too
5. Some people like cream and sugar in their coffee, while\_\_\_\_\_  
a. others drink hot coffee                      b. others like it black  
c. milk is good in coffee, too                      d. sugar can cause cavities
6. Jack is an interesting storyteller and conversationalist. His brother, on the other hand, \_\_\_\_\_  
a. is a newspaper reporter  
b. bores other people by talking about himself  
c. has four children  
d. knows a lot of stories, too
7. I can't ride my bicycle \_\_\_\_\_ there isn't any air in one of the tires.  
a. despite                      b. because                      c. although                      d. but
8. I got to class on time\_\_\_\_\_ I had missed by bus.  
a. even though                      b. nevertheless                      c. because                      d. despite
9. Brian used to be an active person, but now he has to limit his activities\_\_\_\_\_ problem with his health.  
a. nevertheless                      b. because of                      c. although                      d. in spite of
10. It should be easy for Bob to find more time to spend with his children\_\_\_\_\_ he no longer has to work in the evenings and on weekends.  
a. even though                      b. now that                      c. due to                      d. but
11. Jake is a very good student of languages. His brother Michael, \_\_\_\_\_ has never been able to master another language.  
a. therefore                      b. even though                      c. whereas                      d. on the other hand
12. The ancient Aztecs of Mexico had no technology for making tools from metal \_\_\_\_, they had sharp knives and spears made from a stone called obsidian.  
a. Whereas                      b. Although                      c. Nevertheless                      d. Despite



13. Roberts missed the meeting without a good reason. She had been told that it was critical that she be there. I couldn't want to be in her shoes at work tomorrow.  
a. despite                      b. despite the fact that                      c. even      d. however
14. I usually enjoy attending amateur productions in small community theaters. The play we attended last night, \_\_\_\_\_ was so bad that I wanted to leave after the first act.  
a. therefore                      b. however                      c. whereas                      d. even though
15. Some snakes are poisonous, \_\_\_\_\_ other are harmless.  
a. but                      b. so                      c. for                      d. despite
16. Most 15th century Europeans believed that the world was flat and that a ship could conceivably sail off the end of the earth \_\_\_\_\_ many sailors of the time refused to venture forth with explorers into unknown waters.  
a. due to the fact that                      b. Nevertheless                      c. Therefore                      d. Whereas
17. \_\_\_\_\_ the secret of how to make silk remained inside Asia, Europeans were forced to pay incredibly high sums of money for this mysterious material to be brought over land to Europe.  
a. Although                      b. Only if                      c. Due to                      d. As long as
18. Ancient Egyptians mummified their dead through the use of chemicals, \_\_\_\_\_ ancient Peruvians mummified their dead through natural processes by putting dead bodies in extremely dry desert caves.  
a. whereas                      b. because                      c. even though                      d. whether or not
19. Some people really enjoy swimming, \_\_\_\_\_ others are afraid of water.  
a. while                      b. or                      c. despite                      d. in spite of
20. I was cold and wet \_\_\_\_\_ Bob put on his swimming suit and went to the beach.  
a. Therefore                      b. Despite                      c. Although                      d. Nevertheless

1c	2d	3c	4c	5b	6b	7b	8a	9b	10b
11d	12c	13b	14b	15a	16c	17d	18a	19a	20d

### Exercises 3

1. The sky was gray and cloudy \_\_\_\_\_, we went to the beach.  
a. Consequently                      b. Nevertheless                      c. Even though                      d. In spite of
2. I turned on the fan \_\_\_\_\_ the room was hot.  
a. due to                      b. despite                      c. even though                      d. because
3. Sam and I will meet you at the restaurant tonight \_\_\_\_\_ we can find a babysitter.  
a. although                      b. unless                      c. otherwise                      d. only if
4. Carol showed up for the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ I asked her not to be there.  
a. even though                      b. despite                      c. provided that                      d. because
5. You must lend me the money for the trip \_\_\_\_\_, I won't be able to go.  
a. Consequently                      b. Nevertheless                      c. Otherwise                      d. Although
6. The road will remain safe \_\_\_\_\_ the flood washes out the bridge.  
a. as long as                      b. unless                      c. providing that                      d. since
7. The roles of men and women were not the same ancient Greece. For example, men were both participants and spectators in the ancient Olympics. Women \_\_\_\_\_, were forbidden to attend or participate.  
a. nevertheless                      b. on the other hand                      c. therefore                      d. otherwise
8. The window were all left open \_\_\_\_\_, the room was a real mess after the windstorm.  
a. Nevertheless                      b. However                      c. Consequently                      d. Otherwise

9. \_\_\_\_\_ I can't make the presentation myself, I've asked my assistant to be prepared to do it for me.  
a. For                                      b. In the event that      c. Only if                                      d. On the other hand
10. It looks like they're going to succeed \_\_\_\_\_ their present difficulties.  
a. despite                                      b. because of                                      c. even though                                      d. yet
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Marge is an honest person, I still wonder whether she's telling the truth about the incident.  
a. In spite of                                      b. Since                                      c. Though                                      d. In the event that
12. The professor told me that I was doing well, \_\_\_\_\_ my final grade was awful!  
a. so                                      b. therefore                                      c. in spite of                                      d. yet
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Beth has a new car, she no longer takes the computer train to work. She drives to work every day.  
a. Now that                                      b. While                                      c. Although                                      d. In case
14. You'd better give me your answer quickly, \_\_\_\_\_ I'll withdraw the invitation.  
a. although                                      b. nevertheless                                      c. even though                                      d. or else
15. I have to go the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ I want to or not.  
a. provided that                                      b. whether                                      c. even if                                      d. only if
16. What time do you expect Ted to be home? I must talk to him. I usually go to bed around ten, but tell him to call me tonight \_\_\_\_\_ it's past midnight.  
a. however                                      b. in case                                      c. even if                                      d. as long as
17. \_\_\_\_\_ you're going to the fruit market, would you please pick up a few apples for me?  
a. Even if                                      b. Although                                      c. So                                      d. As long as
18. I guess I'm a soft touch. I just lent Jan some money for lunch \_\_\_\_\_ she never paid me back my last loan.
19. I think I did okay in my speech last night \_\_\_\_\_ I'd had almost no sleep for 24 hours.  
a. even                                      b. even                                      c. unless                                      d. despite the fact that
20. I asked Angela to run the office while I'm gone \_\_\_\_\_ I know I can depend on her.  
a. unless                                      b. since                                      c. although                                      d. therefore.

1b	2d	3d	4a	5c	6b	7b	8c	9b	10a
11c	12d	13a	14d	15b	16c	17d	18a	19d	20b

#### Exercise 4

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the salary meets my expectations, I will accept the job offer.  
a. Due to                                      b. Even if                                      c. Provide that                                      d. Unless
2. To power their inventions, people have made use of natural energy sources, \_\_\_\_\_ coal, oil, water, and steam.  
a. in addition to                                      b. as                                      c. and they use                                      d. such as
3. \_\_\_\_\_ excellent art museums, Moscow has a world-famous ballet company.  
a. Because of                                      b. In spite of                                      c. In case of                                      d. In addition to
4. It is still a good idea to know how to type, \_\_\_\_\_ the many technological advances in typewriters and word processors, a skilled operator remains indispensable.  
a. Because of                                      b. In spite of                                      c. In case of                                      d. In addition to
5. Even though a duck may live on water, it stays dry \_\_\_\_\_ the oil on its feathers. The oil prevents the water from soaking through the feathers and reaching its skin.  
a. due to                                      b. besides                                      c. in spite of                                      d. in event of

6. Alex cannot express himself clearly and correctly in writing. He will never advance in his job\_\_\_\_\_ he improves his language skills.  
a. otherwise                      b. if                                  c. only if                              d. unless
7. \_\_\_\_\_ there was no electricity, I was able to read because I had a candle.  
a. Unless                              b. Even though                      c. Even                                  d. Only if
8. A fire must have a readily available supply of oxygen\_\_\_\_\_, it will stop burning  
a. Consequently                      b. Furthermore                      c. Otherwise                              d. However
9. I studied Spanish for your years in high school \_\_\_\_\_, I had trouble taking with people when I was traveling in Spain.  
a. Therefore                              b. On the other hand                              c. Moreover                              d. Nevertheless
10. I'm sorry you've decided not to go with us on the river trip, but \_\_\_\_\_ you change your mind, there will still be enough room on the boat for you.  
a. even                                  b. nevertheless                              c. in the even that                              d. provided that
11. I like to keep the windows open at night no matter how cold it gets. My wife, \_\_\_\_\_ prefers a warm bedroom with all windows tightly shut.  
a. nevertheless                              b. consequently                              c. on the other hand                              d. moreover
12. Some fish can survive only in salt water, \_\_\_\_\_ other species can live only in fresh water.  
a. whereas                              b. unless                                  c. if    d. since
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Jason became famous, he has ignored his old friends. He shouldn't do that.  
a. if    b. Ever since                              c. Even though                              d. Due to
14. We're going to lose this game\_\_\_\_\_ the team doesn't start playing better soon.  
a. if    b. unless                                  c. although                                  d. whereas
15. My two children are cooking dinner for the family for the first time tonight \_\_\_\_\_ the food is terrible, I'm going to enjoy this meal very much. It will be fun to have them cook for me a change.  
a. Only if                                  b. if    c. Even if                                  d. Provided that
16. Jack insisted that he didn't need any help, \_\_\_\_\_ I helped him anyway.  
a. and    b. so    c. besides                                  d. but
17. Florida is famous for its tourist attractions. Its coastline offers excellent white sand beaches\_\_\_\_\_ it has warm, sunny weather.  
a. Otherwise                              b. Furthermore                              c. Nevertheless                              d. On the other hand
18. The flowers will soon start to bloom\_\_\_\_\_ winter is gone and the weather is beginning to get warmer.  
a. event if                                  b. agree I                                  c. I agree                                  d. I will agree
19. Only if you promise to study hard\_\_\_\_\_ to tutor you.  
a. will I agree                              b. agree I                                  c. I agree                                  d. I will agree
20. Camels have either one hump or two humps, the Arabian camel has one hump.  
a. nevertheless                              b. however                                  c. furthermore                              d. otherwise

1c	2d	3d	4b	5a	6d	7b	8c	9d	10c
11c	12a	13b	14a	15c	16d	17b	18b	19a	20b